This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

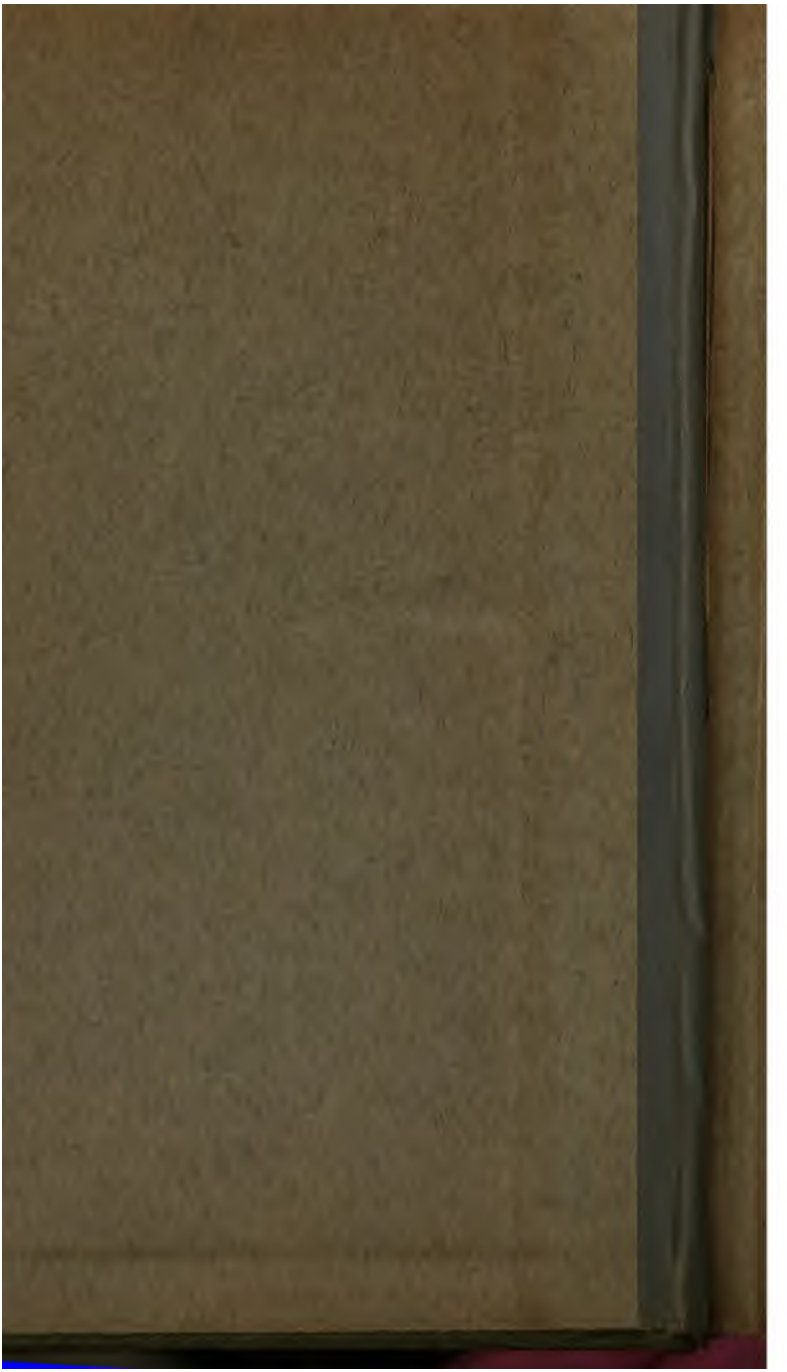
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07591821 3



A COURSE

IN

FIRST YEAR LATIN

FOR

REGENTS' EXAMINATIONS

AND INTRODUCTION TO THE READING OF CAESAR

BY

W. W. SMITH, B.A.

PRINCIPAL OF THE CENTRAL PREPARATORY SCHOOL

NEW YORK

WILLIAM R. JENKINS

851 AND 853 SIXTH AVENUE

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
282090
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
1903

COPYRIGHT, 1901
By W. W. SMITH

NEW YORK
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

PRINTED BY THE
PRESS OF WILLIAM R. JENKINS
NEW YORK

PREFACE.

This course in First Year Latin, while intended especially for students preparing for Regents' Examinations, covers fully the Latin of the first year of the College preparatory course.

The exercises contain most of the sentences and extracts from the Latin authors given in the Regents' papers.

W. W. SMITH.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

INTRODUCTION 1

LESSON I. 4

First Declension—A Nouns—Nominative and Accusative Cases.

LESSON II. 9

First Declension—Use of Cases—Genitive of Possession.

LESSON III. 15

Interrogative Sentences—Ablative of Means; of Place.

LESSON IV. 22

Second Declension—Dative of the Indirect Object—Ablative of Accompaniment.

LESSON V. 28

Second Declension—Neuter Nouns.

LESSON VI. 32

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions—Dative with Adjectives—Prepositions.

LESSON VII. 41

The Verb *Sum*.

LESSON VIII. 50

Third Declension—Consonant Stems—Ablative of Specification.

LESSON IX. 57

Third Declension—I Stems—Ablative of Time.

LESSON X. 63

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

PAGE

LESSON XI. 70

Comparison of Adjectives.

LESSON XII. 79

Adverbs, Formation and Comparison—Review Vocabulary—Review of Accusative and Ablative Uses.

LESSON XIII. 87

The Latin Verb—Plan of Conjugation, Active Voice.

LESSON XIV. 96

First Conjugation—A Verbs.

LESSON XV. 103

Second Conjugation—E Verbs.

LESSON XVI. 109

Third Conjugation—Personal Pronouns.

LESSON XVII. 116

Fourth Conjugation—I Verbs—Relative Pronoun—Relative Clause.

LESSON XVIII. 122

Subjunctive Mood, Active—Hortatory and Optative Subjunctives—Final Clauses.

LESSON XIX. 135

Fourth and Fifth Declensions—Ablative of Separation.

LESSON XX. 141

Irregular Adjectives—Numerals—Accusatives of Time and Space.

LESSON XXI. 152

Pronouns: Demonstrative, Determinative, Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite.

LESSON XXII. 159

The Latin Verb: Plan of Conjugation, Passive Voice.

LESSON XXIII. 170

First Conjugation, Passive Voice—Ablative of Means, of Agent—Locative Case.

PAGE

LESSON XXIV. 179

Second Conjugation, Passive Voice—Dative of Service—Double Dative.

LESSON XXV. 187

Third Conjugation, Passive Voice—Possessive and Partitive Genitives—Subjunctive of Result—Consecutive Clauses.

LESSON XXVI. 196

Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice—Causal and Temporal Clauses—Ablative of Specification.

LESSON XXVII. 205

The Verb *Capio*—Conditional Sentences.

LESSON XXVIII. 218

Review of Subjunctive Constructions—Indirect Questions—Ablative with *Utor*, etc.

LESSON XXIX. 226

Periphrastic Conjugations—Dative of Agent—The Verb *Possum* and other Compounds of *Sum*.

LESSON XXX. 236

Indirect Discourse.

LESSON XXXI. 243

Irregular Verbs: *Volo*, *Nolo*, *Malo*—Dative with Adjectives.

LESSON XXXII. 249

Irregular Verbs: *Fero* and its Compounds—Concessive Clauses.

LESSON XXXIII. 257

Irregular Verbs: *Eo* and its Compounds—*Fio*—Impersonal Verbs.

LESSON XXXIV. 266

Ablative Absolute—Two Accusatives—Compound and Irregular Nouns.

PAGE

LESSON XXXV 274

Gerund, Gerundive and Supine—Stems—Accentuation—Syllables.

LESSON XXXVI 281

Review: Adjectives and Adverbs.

LESSON XXXVII 285

Review: Infinitives and Participles; Numerals.

LESSON XXXVIII 290

Review: Irregular Adjectives; Pronouns.

LESSON XXXIX 294

Review: Verbs.

LESSON XL 301

Review: Use of Cases; Definitions.

LATIN READINGS 316

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 325

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 348

GENERAL INDEX 361

FIRST YEAR LATIN.

INTRODUCTION.

The Latin Alphabet.

1.

The Latin Alphabet, as usually written, is the same as the English, except that it has no *w*.

2.

The letters are divided, according to sound, into **vowels** and **consonants.**

3.

A **diphthong** consists of two vowels united so as to express one sound.

Pronunciation.

4.

Vowels.—The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.	SHORT.
a as in *father.*	**a** as in *fat.*
e as in *they.*	**e** as in *get.*
i as in *machine.*	**i** as in *rig.*
o as in *holy.*	**o** as in *obey.*
u like *oo* in *boot.*	**u** like *oo* in *foot.*

5.

Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.
au like *ow* in *now*.
ei like *a* in *hate*.
eu like *eu* in *feud*.
oe like *oy* in *boy*.
ui like *we*.

6.

The pronunciation of some of the **consonants** is as follows:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *come* and *go*.
ch like *k*.

Syllables.

7.

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

8.

A **syllable** consists of a vowel or a diphthong, with or without a consonant preceding it.

Sentences.

9.

A **sentence** is the expression of a thought in words.

10.

The **subject** of a sentence is that of which some statement is made.

11.

The **predicate** is that which makes some statement about the subject.

Parts of Speech.

12.

The **parts of speech** in Latin are the same as in English, except that there is no article. These parts of speech are: *nouns*, *pronouns*, *adjectives*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions* and *interjections*.

Person, Number and Gender.

13.

The **first person** denotes *the speaker;* the **second person,** the *person addressed;* the **third person,** the *person or thing spoken of.*

14.

The **singular number** denotes *one;* the **plural,** *more than one.*

15.

The **genders** are the *masculine*, the *feminine* and the *neuter.*

Names of males are, of course, masculine; of females, feminine. But many nouns that are neuter in English, are either masculine or feminine in Latin. Thus, names of *rivers*, *winds* and *months* are masculine; names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands* and *trees* are feminine.

Arrangement of Latin Sentences.

16.

In general, the *principal parts* of a Latin sentence are arranged in the following order: *subject* first, *predicate* last, and *object* or *attribute* (if any) between the subject and predicate.

This order is often changed, especially where the predicate is part of the verb sum.

LESSON I.

First Declension. A Nouns.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE CASES. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT.

17.

The **Nominative Case** is the case of the *subject* of a verb, or of a noun or pronoun referring to the same person or thing as the subject.

18.

The **Accusative Case** is the case of the *direct object* of a transitive verb.

EXAMPLE 1.

Galba filiam laudat.
Galba praises (his) *daughter*.

Galba is in the nominative case, *subject* of the verb laudat.

Filiam is in the accusative case, *direct object* of laudat.

19.

A noun in apposition is a noun used to describe another noun. It refers to the same person or thing as the noun it describes and follows immediately after it in the sentence.

EXAMPLE 2.

Galba *nauta* filiam laudat.
Galba *the sailor* praises his daughter.

Nauta (the sailor) is in apposition to Galba, refers to the same person and agrees with Galba in case.

20.

Predicate Nominative.—A noun used to complete the meaning of a verb and *referring to the same person or thing as the subject*, is in the same case as the subject, and is called the *predicate nominative*.

EXAMPLE 3.

Galba est *nauta.*
Galba is *a sailor.*

Nauta (a sailor) is the *predicate nominative;* it completes the meaning of the verb *est* (is) and describes the subject (Galba).

RULE 1.—The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

RULE 2.—The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

RULE 3.—A noun used to describe another noun and referring to the same person or thing, is in the same case.

RULE 4.—A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Thus, the subjects in Examples 1, 2 and 3 being in third person, singular number, the verbs *laudat* and *est* are in third person, singular number.

21.

In nouns of the **First Declension** the *nominative* and *accusative* have the following *endings:*

NOMINATIVE.		ACCUSATIVE.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
-a	**-ae**	**-am**	**-as**

EXAMPLES.

naut-a	**naut-ae**	**naut-am**	**naut-as**
vi-a	**vi-ae**	**vi-am**	**vi-as**

22.

Vocabulary 1.

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
agricola, *farmer.*	angusta, *narrow.*
Britannia, *Britain.*	lata, *broad, wide.*
filia, *daughter.*	longa, *long.*
Galba, *Galba.*	VERBS.
Gallia, *Gaul.*	est, *is.*
Hibernia, *Hibernia (Ireland)*	sunt, (*they*) *are.*
incola, *inhabitant.*	habet, *has.*
insula, *island.*	habent, (*they*) *have.*
nauta, *sailor.*	laudat, *praises.*
provincia, *province.*	laudant, (*they*) *praise.*
Roma, *Rome.*	CONJ.
via, *road.*	et, *and.*

OBS. The adjectives are declined like the nouns, and agree with the nouns which they modify in gender, number and case.

23.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Britannia est insula.
2. Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae.
3. Via est longa.
4. Via est longa et lata.
5. Viae sunt longae.
6. Viae sunt longae et latae.
7. Via lata est longa.
8. Gallia et Britannia sunt provinciae.
9. Roma provincias habet.
10. Britannia insula est provincia.
11. Galba filiam habet.
12. Galba filias habet.
13. Via est longa et angusta.
14. Incolae sunt nautae et agricolae.
15. Agricola filiam laudat.
16. Agricolae nautas laudant.
17. Nauta agricolas laudat.
18. Galba nauta filias habet.
19. Nautam laudant.
20. Nautas laudat.
21. Viae angustae sunt longae.
22. Incolae vias laudant.

24.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Gaul is a province.
2. The road is narrow.
3. The road is long and wide.
4. The wide road is long.
5. The farmer praises the sailor.
6. The sailor praises the farmer.
7. The farmers praise the sailors.
8. The sailors praise the farmers.
9. The farmer has a daughter.
10. The farmer praises Tullia, his daughter.
11. Hibernia is an island.
12. Hibernia and Britain are islands.
13. The inhabitants praise the roads.
14. The farmer has daughters.
15. They praise the sailor.
16. He praises the sailor.
17. They praise the sailors.
18. The province has broad roads.
19. The island has long and narrow roads.
20. The inhabitants are farmers and sailors.

LESSON II.

First Declension.

USE OF CASES. GENITIVE OF POSSESSION.

25.

The Latin noun has *six cases*, as follows:

NAMES.	MEANINGS.
Nominative,	case of the *subject* or of a noun referring to the subject.
Genitive,	possessive case.
Dative,	case of the *indirect object*.
Accusative,	case of the *direct object*.
Vocative,	case of *address*.
Ablative,	English objective case governed by prepositions *by*, *from*, *with*, *in*, etc.

26.

Use of Cases.

(The uses of the Nominative and Accusative have already been given. See Sections 17 and 18, page 4.)

EXAMPLE 1.—GENITIVE CASE.

Tullia est filia *nautae*.
Tullia is the daughter *of the sailor*.

The word *nautae*, following *filia*, answers the question *whose daughter?* that is, it tells whose daughter Tullia is. The ending *-ae* of the genitive case (nautae) has, then, the force of the English *of*. Observe that *filia* and *nautae* denote two different persons.

RULE 5.—A noun used to limit or describe another noun, and not denoting the same person or thing, is put in the *genitive case*.

27.

EXAMPLE 2.—VOCATIVE CASE.

Ubi est filia, *Galba*?
Where is (your) daughter, *Galba*?

Observe that *Galba* is the person addressed. In the English sentence we call the word Galba the *nominative independent* or *nominative of address.* In Latin, the word Galba is in the *vocative case*, which derives its name from the verb *vocat* (calls). So, when we address a person—call him by name or title—we use in Latin the *vocative case.*

28.

First Declension. A Stems.

Nouns of the first declension are *feminine*, except those that (like nauta, agricola, etc.) are masculine by meaning.

To the first declension belong all nouns that have the ending **-ae** in the *genitive singular.* The stem has the form of the ablative singular.

29.

First Declension Forms.

Via, *road.*

SINGULAR.

			MEANING.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom.	via,		*a road.*	**-a**
Gen.	viae,	*of*	*a road.*	**-ae**
Dat.	viae,	*to, for*	*a road.*	**-ae**
Acc.	viam,		*a road.*	**-am**
Voc.	via,		*road.*	**-a**
Abl.	via,	*from, with, by*	*a road.*	**-a**

PLURAL.

			MEANING.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom.	viae,		*roads.*	**-ae**
Gen.	viarum,	*of*	*roads.*	**-arum**
Dat.	viis,	*to, for*	*roads.*	**-is**
Acc.	vias,		*roads.*	**-as**
Voc.	viae,		*roads.*	**-ae**
Abl.	viis,	*from, with, by*	*roads.*	**-is**

	Nauta, *sailor.*		**Ripa,** *bank.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	nauta,	nautae.	ripa,	ripae.
Gen.	nautae,	nautarum.	ripae,	riparum.
Dat.	nautae,	nautis.	ripae,	ripis.
Acc.	nautam,	nautas.	ripam,	ripas.
Voc.	nauta,	nautae.	ripa,	ripae.
Abl.	nauta,	nautis.	ripa,	ripis.

OBS. The *stems* of these nouns are respectively **via, nauta** and **ripa.** The case-endings are added to the stem, dropping the final **a.** Thus, the case-endings of these nouns are added to the forms **vi-, naut-,** and **rip-.** The other nouns of the first declension are declined in the same way.

Write the declension of **insula** and **agricola.**

30.

Vocabulary 2.

Nouns.

Aquitania, -ae,	*Aquitania.*
Belgae, -arum, (pl.)	*the Belgians.*
Celtae, -arum, (pl.)	*the Celts.*
copia, -ae,	*supply, abundance.*
(pl.)	*troops, forces.*
Garumna, -ae,	*the Garumna (river of Gaul).*
patria, -ae,	*native land.*
ripa, -ae,	*bank.*
Sequana, -ae,	*the Sequana (river of Gaul).*
terra, -ae,	*earth, land.*

Adjective.

alta, -ae,	*high, deep.*

Verbs.

appellat,	(*he*) *calls.*
appellant,	(*they*) *call.*
superavit,	(*he*) *conquered.*
superaverunt,	(*they*) *conquered.*
occupat,	(*he*) *seizes.*
occupant,	(*they*) *seize.*

31.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Nauta filiam laudat.
2. Nauta filiam Galbae laudat.
3. Galba filiam nautae laudat.
4. Filia nautae Galbam laudat.
5. Tullia est filia Galbae.
6. Tullia est filia Galbae nautae.
7. Nautae filias Galbae laudant.
8. Aquitania est provincia Galliae.
9. Belgae et Celtae sunt incolae Galliae.
10. Celtae terram Galliam appellant.
11. Gallia est patria Celtarum.
12. Celtae patriam laudant.
13. Celtae terram occupant.
14. Galba terram Belgarum occupat.
15. Galba copias Belgarum superavit.
16. Gallia provincias habet.
17. Celtae provinciam occupant.
18. Ripae Garumnae sunt altae.
19. Viae longae provinciae sunt angustae.
20. Gallia est patria Celtarum et Belgarum.
21. Copiae Galbae Celtas superaverunt.
22. Copiae Galbae terram occupant.

32.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They[2] praise the daughter of the farmer.
2. He[2] praises the daughter of the farmer.
3. Galba conquered the land of the Belgians.
4. Aquitania is a province of Gaul.
5. Britain and Aquitania are provinces.
6. The Celts are inhabitants of Gaul.
7. Galba's troops seize the land of the Celts.
8. Gaul is the native land of the Belgians and the Celts.
9. The inhabitants of the island of Britain are sailors.
10. The roads of the province are wide.
11. They[2] call the province Gaul.
12. The Celts conquered the troops of the province.
13. Galba seizes the islands of the Belgians.
14. They[2] call their[1] native land Gaul.
15. The Celts seize the banks of the Sequana.
16. Galba conquered the forces of the Celts.
17. He[2] seizes the banks of the Sequana.
18. Galba's troops seize the provinces.

---

1 Omit.

2 Indicate subject by the verb form, not as a separate word.

LESSON III.

First Declension.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.
ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

33.

Verb Endings.

We have already seen that the verb in the third person, singular, ends in -t preceded by a vowel (*est* is irregular in form and is an exception to this rule). In the third person plural, the verb ends in -nt preceded by a vowel.

EXAMPLES.

Laudat, *he praises;* laudant, *they praise.*

34.

Interrogative Sentences.

A question in Latin may be indicated:

(1) By *an interrogative word*, as **ubi**, *where;* **quis**, *who*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Ubi est Gallia? Where is Gaul?

Quis nautam laudat? Who praises the sailor?

(2) By *the interrogative particle* **-ne**, which is affixed to the first word of the sentence.

EXAMPLE.

Laudatne Galba nautam?
Does Galba praise the sailor?

Observe that in translating laudat in a question, we supply the auxiliary verb *does;* that is, instead of the form "praises he?" we use the form "does he praise?" The particle **-ne** is called an *enclitic.*

35.

DEFINITION.

An *enclitic* is a word of one syllable affixed to another word and pronounced as if it were part of that word.

(3) Another form of question is introduced by the word **nonne,** composed of the adverb *non* (not) and the interrogative particle *-ne* (which has no meaning in English and merely indicates a question). Nonne means *not,* in questions.

EXAMPLE.

Nonne Galba nautam laudat?
Does *not* Galba praise the sailor?

OBS. Here *nonne* means *not,* and *laudat, does he praise?* This is the form of question used when the question in English contains the word *not.*

Notice again that *-ne* has no meaning in English.

The above form of question may be considered as indicating that the answer "Yes" is expected.

(4) The remaining form of question is introduced by the word **num,** which has no meaning in English, but merely serves to indicate a question where the answer "No" is expected.

EXAMPLE.

Num Galba nautam laudat?
Does *Galba* praise the sailor?

NOTE 1.—Use this form of question only where the answer "No" is clearly indicated; not in ordinary questions, as in (2).

NOTE 2.—Observe that the verb **laudat** may be translated *he praises, he does praise, he is praising;* or, in questions, *does he praise? is he praising?* and **laudant,** *they praise, they do praise, they are praising,* etc. Similar changes may also be made in the translation of other verbs.

36.

Ablative of Agent.

RULE 6.—The person by whom an action is performed is denoted by the *ablative* with the preposition **a** or **ab.**

OBS. This ablative of agent is used after a passive verb only.

EXAMPLES.

1. Nauta *a Galba* laudatur.
   The sailor is praised *by Galba.*

2. Nauta *ab agricola* laudatur.
   The sailor is praised *by the farmer.*

NOTE.—Use **a** before a word beginning with a consonant, except *h.* Use **ab** before a word beginning with a vowel or *h.*

37.

Ablative of Means.

RULE 7.—The means or instrument with which something is done is denoted by the *ablative without a preposition.*

EXAMPLE.

Terra *Garumna* continetur.
The land is bounded *by the Garumna.*

38.

Verb Forms, Third Person.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Laudat, *he praises.*	**Laudatur,** *he is praised.*
Laudant, *they praise.*	**Laudantur,** *they are praised.*
Appellat, *he calls.*	**Appellatur,** *he is called,* etc.

Observe that the Active Voice represents the subject as *performing the action;* the Passive Voice, as *receiving the action.* Also, that a verb in the *third person*, singular or plural, active, is changed to the corresponding passive form by adding the syllable **-ur,** as above.

39.

Ablative of Place.

Rule 8.—Place where is denoted by the ablative with the preposition *in* (in).

Example.

Galba *in Gallia* est.
Galba is *in Gaul.*

40.

Vocabulary 3.

NOUNS.

causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*
iniuria, -ae (f.), *injury.*
patria, -ae (f.), *native land.*
ripa, -ae (f.), *bank.*
terra, -ae (f.), *earth, land.*

VERBS.

appellat, (*he*) *calls.*
appellatur, (*he, it*) *is called.*
appellant, (*they*) *call.*
appellantur, (*they*) *are called.*
continetur, (*it*) *is bounded.*
demonstrat, (*he*) *shows, points out.*
demonstrant, (*they*) *show, point out.*
laudat, (*he*) *praises.*
laudatur, (*he*) *is praised.*
laudant, (*they*) *praise.*
laudantur, (*they*) *are praised.*
occupat, (*he*) *seizes.*
occupatur, (*it*) *is seized.*
occupant, (*they*) *seize.*
occupantur, (*they*) *are seized.*
superat, (*he*) *conquers.*
superatur, (*he*) *is conquered.*
superant, (*they*) *conquer.*
superantur, (*they*) *are conquered*

ADVERB.

ubi, *where.*

INT. PRONOUN.

quis, *who* (*singular*).

41.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Galba filiam laudat.
2. Laudatne Galba filiam?
3. Filia Galbae a nauta laudatur.
4. Ubi est provincia?
5. Provincia in Gallia est.
6. Quis provinciam occupat?
7. Galba provinciam occupat.
8. Provincia a Galba occupatur.
9. Provincia a Celtis occupatur.
10. Ubi est terra Belgarum?
11. Terra Belgarum in Gallia est.
12. Copiae Galbae insulas occupant.
13. Causam iniuriae demonstrant.
14. Provinciae a Celtis occupantur.
15. Provincia Garumna et Sequana continetur.
16. Copiae Celtarum ripas Garumnae occupant.
17. Quis terram Belgarum occupat?
18. Galba terram Belgarum occupat.
19. Nonne Celtae terram Galliam appellant?
20. Terra a Celtis Gallia appellatur.

42.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Where is Galba?
2. Galba is in the province.
3. Who seizes the land of the Celts?
4. Do not the forces of Galba seize the land of the Celts?
5. The forces of Galba seize the land of the Celts.
6. Do not the Celts seize the province?
7. Is not the province seized by the Celts?
8. The provinces are seized by the Celts.
9. Who calls the land Gaul?
10. The Celts call the land Gaul.
11. The land is bounded by the Garumna and the Sequana.
12. Are the inhabitants of the province Celts?
13. Are not the inhabitants of the province Celts?
14. The inhabitants of the province are called Celts.
15. Are the roads of Gaul narrow?
16. The roads of Gaul are long and broad.
17. Who praises the sailor's daughter?
18. The sailor's daughter is praised by Galba the farmer.

LESSON IV.

Second Declension. O Nouns.

NOUNS IN -US, -ER AND -IR. DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

The stems of all second declension nouns end in **o**.

43.

vicus, ager, puer, vir.

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	vic-us	ager	-us, -er, -ir
Gen.	vic-i	agr-i	-i
Dat.	vic-o	agr-o	-o
Acc.	vic-um	agr-um	-um
Voc.	vic-e	ager	-e, -er, -ir
Abl.	vic-o	agr-o	-o

	PLURAL.		
Nom.	vic-i	agr-i	-i
Gen.	vic-orum	agr-orum	-orum
Dat.	vic-is	agr-is	-is
Acc.	vic-os	agr-os	-os
Voc.	vic-i	agr-i	-i
Abl.	vic-is	agr-is	-is

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	puer	puer-i	vir	vir-i
Gen.	puer-i	puer-orum	vir-i	vir-orum
Dat.	puer-o	puer-is	vir-o	vir-is
Acc.	puer-um	puer-os	vir-um	vir-os
Voc.	puer	puer-i	vir	vir-i
Abl.	puer-o	puer-is	vir-o	vir-is

NOTE.—Nouns ending in **-us, -er** and **-ir** are *masculine*. But names of towns in **-us** are *feminine*, as *Corinthus*, Corinth.

Observe that the Vocative singular of nouns in **-us** ends in **-e**. In all other Latin nouns, *the Vocative has the same ending as the Nominative.*

44.

Dative Case.

The Dative Case derives its name from the verb form **dat** (*he gives*) and corresponds to the English objective case governed by *to* or *for*.

RULE 9.—The *Indirect Object* of a verb is put in the *Dative Case.*

EXAMPLE.

Galba *puero* librum dat.

Galba gives a book *to the boy.*

OBS. *Librum* is in the accusative case and is the *direct object* of *dat.*

Puero is in the dative case, *indirect object* of *dat.*

NOTE.—*Galba dat* (Galba gives) is incomplete. We must complete the meaning of the verb by telling *what Galba gives.* The word *librum* (a book) completes the meaning of *dat.* But *to whom* does he give it? We must supply some word, as *puero* (a boy), to tell whom. So *librum*, the *direct object*, tells *what* he gives, and *puero*, the *indirect object*, tells *to whom* he gives it.

45.

Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE 10.—Accompaniment is denoted by the *ablative*, with the preposition *cum.*

EXAMPLE.

In agro *cum puero* est.
He is in the field *with the boy.*

46.

Vocabulary 4.

Nouns.

ager, agri[1] (m.), *field*, pl. *territories*.
filius, filii (m.), *son*.
Galli, -orum, pl., *the Gauls*.
Helvetii, -orum, pl., *the Helvetians*.
liber, libri (m.), *book*.
locus, loci (m.), *place, region*.
Marcus, -i (m.), *Marcus*.
natura, -ae (f.), *nature*.
Oceanus, -i (m.), *the Ocean*.
puer, pueri (m.), *boy*.
vicus, -i (m.), *village*.
vir, -i (m.), *man*.

Prep. w. Acc.

inter.[2] *between*.
trans, *across*

Verbs.

dat, (*he*) *gives*.
dant, (*they*) *give*.
incendunt, (*they*) *burn*.
habent, (*they*) *have, hold*.
vastant, (*they*) *lay waste*.

1 The second form indicates the genitive singular.
2 Inter and trans govern the accusative case.

47.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Quis est filius Galbae?
2. Marcus est filius Galbae.
3. Nonne sunt pueri in agro?
4. Pueri in agro sunt cum Marco.
5. Marcus pueris libros dat.
6. Pueri Marco librum dant.
7. Helvetii vicos incendunt.
8. Terra Helvetiorum Garumna et Oceano continetur.
9. Garumna inter Gallos et Belgas est.
10. Helvetii agros Gallorum vastant.
11. Agri Gallorum ab Helvetiis vastantur.
12. Quis agros Gallorum occupat?
13. Galba agros Gallorum occupat.
14. Nonne Galli Helvetiis agros dant?
15. Laudatne Galba agros Gallorum?
16. Copiae Helvetiorum in agris Gallorum sunt.
17. Vici Gallorum a copiis Galbae occupantur.
18. Copiae Galbae vicos Gallorum occupant.

48.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Where are the boys?
2. The boys are in the field.
3. Where are the sons of Marcus?
4. The sons of Marcus are in the fields.
5. Does not Marcus give his son a book?
6. Marcus gives books to his son.
7. The Gauls lay waste the fields of the province.
8. The Helvetii burn the villages of the Gauls.
9. Gaul is bounded by the Ocean.
10. The son of Marcus is in the village with the boys.
11. Do the boys show the road to Marcus?
12. The fields of the Gauls are laid waste by the Helvetians.
13. Are the Belgians in the regions across the Sequana?
14. The land of the Gauls is between the Sequana and the Garumna.

LESSON V.

Second Declension.

NEUTER NOUNS.

49.

Oppidum, *a town.*

	SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDING.	PLURAL.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom.	oppid-um	**-um**	oppid-a	**-a**
Gen.	oppid-i	**-i**	oppid-orum	**-orum**
Dat.	oppid-o	**-o**	oppid-is	**-is**
Acc.	oppid-um	**-um**	oppid-a	**-a**
Voc.	oppid-um	**-um**	oppid-a	**-a**
Abl.	oppid-o	**-o**	oppid-is	**-is**

OBS. *All neuter nouns of the Second Declension* end in the nominative singular in **-um.** The *stem* ends in **-o.** Thus, the stem of oppidum is *oppido.* The different cases are formed by dropping the final **o** of the stem and adding the endings as above.

50.

In all neuter nouns, the *nominative, accusative* and *vocative* have the same form. These cases in the plural always end in **-a.**

51.

Vocabulary 5.

Nouns.

bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
Casticus, -i (m.), *Casticus (a Gallic chief).*
Germani, -orum (m. pl.), *the Germans.*
oppidum, -i (n.), *town.*
legatus, -i (m.), *lieutenant, ambassador.*
regnum, -i (n.), *kingdom, royal power.*
Rhenus, -i (m.), *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -i (m.), *the Rhone.*

Preps. with Abl.

in, *in.*
cum, *with.*

Preps. with Acc.

inter, *between.*
trans, *across.*

Adverbs.

nunc, *now.*
saepe, *often.*

Verbs.

gerit, (*he*) *wages, carries on.*
gerunt, (*they*) *wage, carry on.*

---

bellum gerit, (*he*) *wages war.*
bellum gerunt, (*they*) *wage war*

52.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Ubi est regnum Germanorum?
2. Regnum Germanorum trans Rhenum est.
3. Nonne copiae Germanorum agros Galliae occupant?
4. Agri Gallorum a Germanis nunc occupantur.
5. Incenduntne Helvetii oppida?
6. Oppida et vicos incendunt.
7. Casticus regnum in Gallia habet.
8. Provinciae Germanorum trans Rhenum sunt.
9. Quis agros Germanorum occupat?
10. Galba copias Germanorum superat et agros occupat.
11. Germani bellum in Gallia saepe gerunt.
12. Belgae inter Sequanam et agros Germanorum sunt.
13. Galba bellum in Gallia gerit.
14. Galba legatus cum Gallis bellum gerit.
15. Nonne Germani agros Gallorum vastant?
16. Germani copias Gallorum superant et agros vastant.

53.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Who is Marcus?
2. Marcus is the son of Casticus.
3. Is not Marcus a sailor?
4. Marcus and Casticus are sailors.
5. Where are the sons of Marcus?
6. The sons of Marcus are in the village.
7. Have the Germans territories across the Rhine?
8. Have not the Germans territories across the Rhine?
9. The Germans have territories across the Rhine.
10. The land of the Germans is bounded by the territories of the Belgians.
11. Do the Germans wage war with the Gauls?
12. The Germans often wage war with the Gauls.
13. The Gauls are conquered by the Germans.
14. The towns and villages of the Gauls are burned by the Germans.
15. The Helvetians wage war in the territories of the Gauls.
16. Galba conquers the Helvetians and burns the towns and villages.

LESSON VI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS.

54.

The *First and Second Declension adjectives* form the first of the two divisions of regular adjectives.

55.

The *masculine form* of the adjective ends (in the nom. sing.) in **-us** or **-er**, and is declined like a masculine noun of the second declension.

56.

The *feminine form* ends in **-a**, and is declined like a noun of the first declension.

57.

The *neuter form* ends in **-um**, and is declined like a neuter noun of the second declension.

58.

Review of Noun Forms.

Among the noun forms, which we have already learned, are the following:

SINGULAR.

	Second Declension. Masc. Forms.		First Declension. Fem. Form.	Second Declension. Neuter Form.
Nom.	vic-us	puer	vi-a	oppid-um
Gen.	vic-i	puer-i	vi-ae	oppid-i
Dat.	vic-o	puer-o	vi-ae	oppid-o
Acc.	vic-um	puer-um	vi-am	oppid-um
Voc.	vic-e	puer	vi-a	oppid-um
Abl.	vic-o	puer-o	vi-a	oppid-o

PLURAL.

Nom.	vic-i	puer-i	vi-ae	oppid-a
Gen.	vic-orum	puer-orum	vi-arum	oppid-orum
Dat.	vic-is	puer-is	vi-is	oppid-is
Acc.	vic-os	puer-os	vi-as	oppid-a
Voc.	vic-i	puer-i	vi-ae	oppid-a
Abl.	vic-is	puer-is	vi-is	oppid-is

59.

Adjective Forms.

Compare, with the above noun endings, the forms of the adjectives. In learning the noun forms we have also learned the adjectives, for they are exactly alike.

60.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um
Gen.	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-i
Dat.	bon-o	bon-ae	bon-o
Acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um
Voc.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um
Abl.	bon-o	bon-a	bon-o

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-a
Gen.	bon-orum	bon-arum	bon-orum
Dat.	bon-is	bon-is	bon-is
Acc.	bon-os	bon-as	bon-a
Voc.	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-a
Abl.	bon-is	bon-is	bon-is

61.

Liber, libera, liberum, *free.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	liber	liber-a	liber-um
Gen.	liber-i	liber-ae	liber-i
Dat.	liber-o	liber-ae	liber-o
Acc.	liber-um	liber-am	liber-um
Voc.	liber	liber-a	liber-um
Abl.	liber-o	liber-a	liber-o

PLURAL.

Nom.	liber-i	liber-ae	liber-a
Gen.	liber-orum	liber-arum	liber-orum
Dat.	liber-is	liber-is	liber-is
Acc.	liber-os	liber-as	liber-a
Voc.	liber-i	liber-ae	liber-a
Abl.	liber-is	liber-is	liber-is

62.

Aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aeger	aegr-a	aegr-um
Gen.	aegr-i	aegr-ae	aegr-i
Dat.	aegr-o	aegr-ae	aegr-o
Acc.	aegr-um	aegr-am	aegr-um
Voc.	aeger	aegr-a	aegr-um
Abl.	aegr-o	aegr-a	aegr-o
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	aegr-i	aegr-ae	aegr-a
Gen.	aegr-orum	aegr-arum	aegr-orum
Dat.	aegr-is	aegr-is	aegr-is
Acc.	aegr-os	aegr-as	aegr-a
Voc.	aegr-i	aegr-ae	aegr-a
Abl.	aegr-is	aegr-is	aegr-is

NOTE 1.—**Pulcher** (*beautiful*), **sacer** (*sacred*), **noster** (*our*), and **vester** (*your*) are declined like **aeger.**

Observe that **noster** and **vester** are used as adjectives (although called possessive pronouns) and agree with the nouns which they modify in gender, number and case.

Meus (*my* or *mine*), **tuus** (*your*), and **suus** (*his, hers* or *their*) are used in the same way.

NOTE 2.—**Tuus** means *your* or *yours*, used in speaking to *one person;* as, **tuus liber,** *your book;* **tui libri,** *your books*, etc.

Vester means *your* or *yours*, used in speaking to *more than one person;* as, **vester vicus,** *your village;* **vestri libri,** *your books*, etc.

63.

Agreement of Adjectives.

RULE 11.—An adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in gender, number and case.

EXAMPLES.

1. Via bona, *a good road.*
2. Vicus magnus, *a large village.*
3. Oppidum magnum, *a large town.*
4. Puer bonus, *a good boy.*
5. Nauta bonus, *a good sailor.*
6. Vir bonus, *a good man.*
7. Oppida magna, *large towns.*
8. Vicos magnos, *large villages.*

64.

Observe that in each example the *adjective agrees with the noun in gender, number and case.* Thus, in Ex. 1, *bona* is *fem., sing., nom. case,* because it modifies *via,* which is *fem., sing., nom.* Also, in Ex. 5, *bonus* modifies *nauta; nauta* is *masc., sing., nom. case,* and *bonus* (the *masc., sing., nom. case* of the adjective) must be used with it.

NOTE.—The adjective of the first and second declension may modify a noun of any of the five declensions.

65.

Dative with Adjectives.

The *dative* is used after adjectives or adverbs to denote *that to which the given quality is directed.*

EXAMPLE.

Liber *puero* gratus est.
The book is pleasing *to the boy.*

66.

Prepositions.

The following prepositions govern the *ablative case:*

a, ab, *by, from.*	e, ex, *out of, from.*
cum, *with.*	in, *in, on* (expressing place).
de, *about, concerning.*	pro, *for* (for the sake of).

Other prepositions govern the *accusative case*, as:

ad, *to, towards.*	inter, *between, among.*
apud, *among.*	post, *after, behind.*
in, *into.*	trans, *across.*

Memorize carefully the above prepositions, with their meanings.

67.

Vocabulary 6.

ADJECTIVES.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
altus,	alta,	altum,	*high, deep.*
angustus,	angusta,	angustum,	*narrow.*
bonus,	bona,	bonum,	*good.*
gratus,	grata,	gratum,	*pleasing, grateful.*
latus,	lata,	latum,	*broad, wide.*
liber,	libera,	liberum,	*free.*
longus,	longa,	longum,	*long.*
magnus,	magna,	magnum,	*large, great.*
meus,	mea,	meum,	*my, mine.*
multus,	multa,	multum,	*much.*
multi (pl.),	multae,	multa,	*many.*
noster,	nostra,	nostrum,	*our, ours.*
suus,	sua,	suum,	*his, her, their.*
tuus,	tua,	tuum,	*your, yours.*
vester,	vestra,	vestrum,	*your, yours.*

NOUNS.

amicus, -i (m.), *friend.*
frumentum, -i (n.), *grain.*
donum, -i (n.), *gift, present.*

ADVERBS.

non, *not.*
semper, *always.*
undique, *on all sides.*

VERB.

incolunt, (*they*) *live, inhabit.*

68.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Vicus est magnus.
2. Suntne vici magni?
3. Vici sunt magni.
4. Puer amico donum dat.
5. Pueri amicis multa dona dant.
6. Nonne Marcus multos amicos habet?
7. Marcus multos amicos habet.
8. Estne nostra provincia magna?
9. Nostra provincia est magna.
10. Habentne vestrae provinciae multas vias?
11. Nostrae provinciae multas vias longas et latas habent.
12. Belgae cum Germanis bellum semper gerunt.
13. Vastantne Germani agros latos Gallorum?
14. Germani agros Gallorum vastant et multos vicos incendunt.
15. Nonne tua provincia multos incolas habet?
16. Mea provincia multos incolas habet.

69.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Where is your town?
2. Our town is in the province.
3. Where are the large towns of the Germans?
4. The Germans have many large towns across the Rhine.
5. Have not the Helvetians many villages?
6. The Helvetians have not many large villages.
7. The Helvetians burn their towns and villages.
8. They conquer the Gauls and lay waste the fields.
9. The Gauls point out the cause of the injury.
10. Galba the lieutenant carries on war with the Gauls.
11. There are[1] many large towns in our provinces.
12. The territories of the Gauls are bounded by the Garumna and the Sequana.
13. Is not the Rhine broad and deep?
14. The Helvetians have a large supply of grain.
15. The Gauls give a supply of grain to the lieutenant.
16. The forces of the Germans are in the provinces across the Rhine.

---

1 There are, *sunt*.

LESSON VII.

The Verb Sum.

70.

Sum, *I am.* **Present stem, es. Perfect stem, fu.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *you are.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*	eramus, *we were.*
eras, *you were.*	eratis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

ero, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *you will be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fu-i, *I have been, or I was.*	fu-imus, *we have been, or we were.*
fu-isti, *you have been, or you were.*	fu-istis, *you have been, or you were.*
fuit, *he has been, or he was.*	fu-erunt, *they have been, or they were.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
fu-eram, *I had been.*	fu-eramus, *we had been.*
fu-eras, *thou hadst been.*	fu-eratis, *you had been.*
fu-erat, *he had been.*	fu-erant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fu-ero, *I shall have been.*	fu-erimus, *we shall have been.*
fu-eris, *thou wilt have been.*	fu-eritis, *you will have been.*
fu-erit, *he will have been.*	fu-erint, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	es, *be thou.*	es-te, *be ye.*
Fut.	es-to, *thou shalt be.*	es-tote, *ye shall be.*
	es-to, *he shall be.*	sunto, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. es-se, *to be.*
Perf. fu-isse, *to have been.*
Fut. futurus esse, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futurus, *about to be.*

71.

Principal Parts.

The *principal parts* of a verb are those forms on which its conjugation is based.

The *principal parts* of the verb **Sum** are the *Present Indicative* (first pers. sing.), **sum**; the *Present Infinitive*, **esse**; and the *Perfect Indicative* (first pers. sing.), **fui.**

72.
Verb Stems.

The *verb stems* are the *Present Stem* and the *Perfect Stem.*

73.

The *present stem* of a verb may be formed by dropping the final syllable of the present infinitive. Thus:

VERB.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.
sum	es-se	es
amo	ama-re	ama
monéo	mone-re	mone
rego	rege-re	rege
audio	audi-re	audi

74.

The *Perfect Indicative* (first pers. sing.) of a verb always ends in -i.

75.

The *perfect stem* of a verb is formed by dropping the final -i of the perfect indicative. Thus:

VERB.	PERF. INDICATIVE.	PERF. STEM.
sum	fu-i	fu-
amo	amav-i	amav-
moneo	monu-i	monu-
rego	rex-i	rex-
audio	audiv-i	audiv-

Formation of Tenses.

76.

From the *present stem* are derived the *simple tenses—present* and *imperfect* (ind. and sub.) and *future* (ind.)—and the *imperative—present* and *future.*

The simple tenses of the verb *sum* are irregular.

77.

The *imperative* of *sum* is formed as follows: The first form (second pers. sing., pres.) is the same as the present stem, **es**.

Pres.	es	es-te
Fut.	es-to	es-tote
	es-to	sunto[1]

NOTE 1.—*Sunto*, irregular. But in all verbs the third pers. plur., future imp., may be considered as formed by adding **-o** to the third pers. plur. of the pres. indicative.

78.

From the perfect stem are derived—

(1) The *perfect tenses: perfect, pluperfect* and *future perfect indicative.*

(2) The *perfect infinitive.*

NOTE.—This applies not only to the verb *sum*, but also to all other verbs (active voice).

79.

The *Perfect Indicative* of any verb is formed by adding, to the perfect stem of that verb, the endings

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-i	-imus
-isti	-istis
-it	-erunt

EXAMPLES.

Verb **sum.**		*Verb* **amo.**	
Perf. stem **fu.**		*Perf. stem* **amav.**	
PERF. IND.		PERF. IND.	
fu-i	**fu-imus**	**amav-i**	**amav-imus**
fu-isti	**fu-istis**	**amav-isti**	**amav-istis**
fu-it	**fu-erunt**	**amav-it**	**amav-erunt**

80.

The *Pluperfect Indicative* of any verb is formed by adding, to the *perfect stem* of that verb, the *imperfect ind.* of *sum:*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eram	-eramus
-eras	-eratis
-erat	-erant

EXAMPLES.

Verb sum.		*Verb* amo.	
Perf. stem fu.		*Perf. stem* amav.	
PLUPERF. IND.		PLUPERF. IND.	
fu-eram	fu-eramus	amav-eram	amav-eramus
fu-eras	fu-eratis	amav-eras	amav-eratis
fu-erat	fu-erant	amav-erat	amav-erant

81.

The *Future Perfect Indicative* of any verb is formed by adding, to the *perfect stem* of that verb, the *future tense* of *sum.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ero	-erimus
-eris	-eritis
-erit	-erint (changed from erunt)

EXAMPLES.

Verb sum.		*Verb* amo.	
Perf. stem fu.		*Perf. stem* amav.	
FUT. PERF. IND.		FUT. PERF. IND.	
fu-ero	fu-erimus	amav-ero	amav-erimus
fu-eris	fu-eritis	amav-eris	amav-eritis
fu-erit	fu-erint	amav-erit	amav-erint

82.

The *Perfect Infinitive* of any verb is formed by adding, to the *perfect stem* of that verb, the *present infinitive* (*esse*) of the verb *sum*, changing the first *e* to *i*—*esse* to *isse*.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PERF. STEM.	PERF. INFINITIVE.
sum	fu-	fu-isse
amo	amav-	amav-isse
moneo	monu-	monu-isse
rego	rex-	rex-isse
audio	audiv-	audiv-isse

83.

Thus we may arrange the *perfect system* of any verb (active or neuter) on the following plan:

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Perfect stem +	-i	Perfect stem +	-imus
"	-isti	"	-istis
"	-it	"	-erunt

PLUPERFECT.

"	-eram	"	-eramus
"	-eras	"	-eratis
"	-erat	"	-erant

FUT. PERFECT.

"	-ero	"	-erimus
"	-eris	"	-eritis
"	-erit	"	-erint

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

Perfect stem + -isse

84.

Vocabulary 7.

REVIEW.

NOUNS.

ager, agri (m.), *field.*
amicus, -i (m.), *friend.*
bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
copia, -ae (f.), *supply.*
copiae, -arum, *troops, forces.*
donum, -i (n.), *gift.*
filia, -ae (f.), *daughter.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch, trench.*
filius, -i (m.), *son.*
frumentum, -i (n.), *grain.*
incola, -ae (m.), *inhabitant.*
iniuria, -ae (f.), *injury.*
insula, -ae (f.), *island.*
legatus, -i (m.), *lieutenant, ambassador.*
liber, libri (m)., *book.*
locus, -i (m.), *place, region.*
natura, -ae (f.), *nature.*
oppidum, -i (n.), *town.*
patria, -ae (f.), *native land.*
provincia, -ae (f.), *province.*
puer, -i (m.), *boy.*
regnum, -i (n.), *kingdom, royal power.*
ripa, -ae (f.), *bank.*
terra, -ae (f.), *land, earth.*

ADVERBS.

cras, *to-morrow.*
non, *not.*
nunc, *now.*
saepe, *often.*
semper, *always.*
ubi, *where.*
undique, *on all sides.*

85.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1.	ero.	11.	fuimus.	21.	eratis.
2.	eramus.	12.	fuerunt.	22.	sunto.
3.	eritis.	13.	esse.	23.	estote.
4.	eram	14.	fuit.	24.	sumus.
5.	este.	15.	fuisse.	25.	eras.
6.	fuisti.	16.	futurus.	26.	fueram.
7.	fueramus.	17.	futurus esse.	27.	fuerit.
8.	fuerint.	18.	fueras.	28.	fuerat.
9.	eris.	19.	fueris.	29.	fuerimus.
10.	erant.	20.	estis.	30.	erunt.

86.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Ubi fuit legatus?
2. Galba legatus in Gallia fuit.
3. Copia frumenti erit in vico.
4. Incolae provinciae sumus.
5. Vici Germanorum trans Rhenum sunt.
6. Helvetii in provincia erunt.
7. Ubi fuisti, puer? In vico fui.
8. Ubi cras eritis, pueri?
9. In agris cum amicis erimus.
10. Ubi copiae Germanorum fuerant?
11. Copiae Germanorum in ripis Rheni fuerant.
12. Rhodanus et Rhenus erant alti et lati.

85.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They are inhabitants of the province of Gaul.
2. They had often been in Britain.
3. We have been in the village with our friends.
4. There was a supply of grain in the villages.
5. The forces of the Helvetians had been in the province.
6. The ambassadors point out the cause of the injuries.
7. The Germans live across the Rhine.
8. They praise the fields and villages of the Gauls.
9. They conquer the Gauls, burn their villages and lay waste their fields.
10. Galba the lieutenant is in Gaul; he conquers the Germans.

LESSON VIII.

Third Declension.

CONSONANT STEMS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

To the Third Declension belong all nouns that end, in the *genitive singular* in **-is.**

86.

NOUN FORMS.

	consul (m.), *consul.*	**pater** (m.), *father.*	**virgo** (f.), *maiden.*	**lapis** (f.), *stone.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	consul	pater	virgo	lapi-s
Gen.	consul-is	patr-is	virgin-is	lapid-is
Dat.	consul-i	patr-i	virgin-i	lapid-i
Acc.	consul-em	patr-em	virgin-em	lapid-em
Voc.	consul	pater	virgo	lapi-s
Abl.	consul-e	patr-e	virgin-e	lapid-e
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	consul-es	patr-es	virgin-es	lapid-es
Gen.	consul-um	patr-um	virgin-um	lapid-um
Dat.	consul-ibus	patr-ibus	virgin-ibus	lapid-ibus
Acc.	consul-es	patr-es	virgin-es	lapid-es
Voc.	consul-es	patr-es	virgin-es	lapid-es
Abl.	consul-ibus	patr-ibus	virgin-ibus	lapid-ibus

	leo (m.), *lion.*	**miles** (m.), *soldier.*	**virtus** (f.), *virtue.*	**carmen** (n.), *song, poem.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	leo	mile-s	virtu-s	carmen
Gen.	leoni-s	milit-is	virtut-is	carmin-is
Dat.	leon-i	milit-i	virtut-i	carmin-i
Acc.	leon-em	milit-em	virtut-em	carmen
Voc.	leo	mile-s	virtu-s	carmen
Abl.	leon-e	milit-e	virtut-e	carmin-e
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	leon-es	milit-es	virtut-es	carmin-a
Gen.	leon-um	milit-um	virtut-um	carmin-um
Dat.	leon-ibus	milit-ibus	virtut-ibus	carmin-ibus
Acc.	leon-es	milit-es	virtut-es	carmin-a
Voc.	leon-es	milit-es	virtut-es	carmin-a
Abl.	leon-ibus	milit-ibus	virtut-ibus	carmin-ibus

	caput (n.), *head.*	**ius** (n.), *right.*	**opus** (n.), *work.*	**civitas** (f.), *state.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	caput	ius	opus	civitas
Gen.	capit-is	iur-is	oper-is	civitat-is
Dat.	capit-i	iur-i	oper-i	civitat-i
Acc.	caput	ius	opus	civitat-em
Voc.	caput	ius	opus	civitas
Abl.	capit-e	iur-e	oper-e	civitat-e

	PLURAL.			
Nom.	capit-a	iur-a	oper-a	civitat-es
Gen.	capit-um	iur-um	oper-um	civitat-um
Dat.	capit-ibus	iur-ibus	oper-ibus	civitat-ibus
Acc.	capit-a	iur-a	oper-a	civitat-es
Voc.	capit-a	iur-a	oper-a	civitat-es
Abl.	capit-ibus	iur-ibus	oper-ibus	civitat-ibus

	legio (f.), *legion.*		**flumen** (n.), *river.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	legio	legion-es	flumen	flumin-a
Gen.	legion-is	legion-um	flumin-is	flumin-um
Dat.	legion-i	legion-ibus	flumin-i	flumin-ibus
Acc.	legion-em	legion-es	flumen	flumin-a
Voc.	legio	legion-es	flumen	flumin-a
Abl.	legion-e	legion-ibus	flumin-e	flumin-ibus

87.

Case Endings.

Observe that the endings in all of the preceding nouns are as follows:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. or F.	NEUT.	M. or F.	NEUT.
Nom.	——	——	-es	-a
Gen.	-is	-is	-um	-um
Dat.	-i	-i	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-em	——	-es	-a
Voc.	——	——	-es	-a
Abl.	-e	-e	-ibus	-ibus

NOTE.—Observe that in all nouns of this declension the *Genitive sing.* ends in **-is**, *Dative sing.* in **-i**, and *Ablative* in **-e** (sometimes **-i**).

Also, that the *Gen. Plur.* ends in **-um**, the *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* in **-ibus.**

NOTE.—In all neuter nouns in Latin the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. Sing.* have the same ending; and the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. Plur.* always end in **-a.**

OBS. We may also decline the plural of third declension nouns in the following manner:

	miles (m.)	**flumen** (n.)
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
Nom., Acc. and Voc.	milites	flumina
Gen.	militum	fluminum
Dat. and Abl.	militibus	fluminibus

88.

Ablative of Specification.

RULE 12.—The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done.

It is sometimes called the *Ablative of Respect.*

It answers the questions: *In what respect? In what particular?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lingua* et *legibus* differunt.
   They differ *in language* and *laws.*
2. *Virtute* praecedunt.
   They excel *in bravery.*

89.

Vocabulary 8.

NOUNS.

Arar, Araris[1] (m.), *the Arar (river)*.
Caesar, Caesaris (m.), *Caesar*.
castra, -orum (n. pl.), *camp*.
explorator, exploratoris (m.), *scout, spy*.
flumen, fluminis (n.), *river*.
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch, trench*.
Geneva, -ae (f.), *Geneva*.
lex, legis (f.), *law*.
lingua, -ae (f.), *language*.
mercator, mercatoris (m.), *merchant*.
miles, militis (m.), *soldier*.
pars, partis (f.), *part*.

REL. PRONOUN.

qui, *who (sing. and plur.)*

REF. PRONOUN.

se (acc.), *himself, themselves*.

ADJECTIVES.

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest*.
totus, -a, -um, *all, whole*.
tres, *three*.
divisus, -a, -um, *divided*.

VERBS.

venit, *(he) comes*.
veniunt, *(they) come*.
influit, *(it) flows into*.
differunt, *(they) differ*.
oppugnavit, *(he) attacked*.

ADVERBS.

continenter, *continually*.
iam, *already*.

---

1 The second form of nouns in the vocabulary is the genitive singular.

90.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Caesar multos milites in Gallia habet.
2. Oppidum Geneva appellatur.
3. Oppidum Genevam appellant.
4. Flumen Arar per fines Aeduorum in Rhodanum influit.
5. Gallia est divisa in partes tres.
6. Belgae partem Galliae incolunt.
7. Lingua et legibus inter se[1] differunt.
8. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt.
9. Belgae cum Germanis continenter bellum gerunt.
10. Terra Gallorum flumine Garumna, Oceano et agris Belgarum continetur.
11. Ubi sunt milites Caesaris?
12. Milites Caesaris in provincia sunt.
13. Romani oppidum Genevam occupant.
14. Helvetii agros Gallorum vastant.
15. Caesar castra Helvetiorum oppugnavit.

---

1 Inter se, *from one another.*

91.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They are called in our language Gauls.
2. Caesar's soldiers seize the town.
3. Where is the town of Geneva?[1]
4. The town of Geneva is near[2] the river Rhone.
5. Is not the Arar a broad and deep river?
6. The Arar is deep but[3] narrow.
7. Caesar led[4] his forces across the river.
8. He attacked the camp of the Helvetians.
9. The soldiers occupy the entire town.
10. Are there merchants in Gaul?
11. Merchants often come to the villages of the Gauls?
12. The Belgians are nearest to the river Rhine.
13. They often wage war with the Germans.
14. There were many soldiers in the camp of Caesar.
15. The Helvetians are already in the province.
16. They are laying waste the fields of our friends.
17. The town of Geneva is occupied by the soldiers of Caesar.
18. The soldiers seize the camp and burn the villages of the Germans.

---

1 Latin form: the town Geneva; Geneva in apposition to town.
2 ad. 3 sed. 4 duxit.

LESSON IX.

Third Declension.

I STEMS. ABLATIVES OF TIME AND PLACE.

92.

DECLENSION FORMS.

	turris (f.), *tower.*	**ignis** (m.), *fire.*	**hostis** (m.), *enemy.*	**civis** (m.), *citizen.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	turr-is	ign-is	host-is	civ-is
Gen.	turr-is	ign-is	host-is	civ-is
Dat.	turr-i	ign-i	host-i	civ-i
Acc.	turr-im, -em	ign-em	host-em	civ-em
Voc.	turr-is	ign-is	host-is	civ-is
Abl.	turr-i, -e	ign-i, -e	host-e	civ-e
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	turr-es	ign-es	host-es	civ-es
Gen.	turr-ium	ign-ium	host-ium	civ-ium
Dat.	turr-ibus	ign-ibus	host-ibus	civ-ibus
Acc.	turr-es	ign-es	host-es	civ-es
Voc.	turr-es	ign-es	host-es	civ-es
Abl.	turr-ibus	ign-ibus	host-ibus	civ-ibus

	mare (n.), *sea.*	**animal** (n.), *animal.*	**calcar** (n.), *spur.*	**nubes** (f.), *cloud.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	mar-e	animal	calcar	nub-es
Gen.	mar-is	animal-is	calcar-is	nub-is
Dat.	mar-i	animal-i	calcar-i	nub-i
Acc.	mar-e	animal	calcar	nub-em
Voc.	mar-e	animal	calcar	nub-es
Abl.	mar-i	animal-i	calcar-i	nub-e
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	mar-ia	animal-ia	calcar-ia	nub-es
Gen.	mar-ium	animal-ium	calcar-ium	nub-ium
Dat.	mar-ibus	animal-ibus	calcar-ibus	nub-ibus
Acc.	mar-ia	animal-ia	calcar-ia	nub-es
Voc.	mar-ia	animal-ia	calcar-ia	nub-es
Abl.	mar-ibus	animal-ibus	calcar-ibus	nub-ibus

	cliens (m.), *client.*	**urbs** (f.), *city.*	CASE ENDINGS. M. or F.	NEUT.
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	clien-s	urb-s	——	——
Gen.	client-is	urb-is	-is	-is
Dat.	client-i	urb-i	-i	-i
Acc.	client-em	urb-em	-em or -im	——
Voc.	clien-s	urb-s	——	——
Abl.	client-e	urb-e	-e or -i	-i
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	client-es	urb-es	-es	-ia
Gen.	client-ium	urb-ium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	client-ibus	urb-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	client-es	urb-es	-es	-ia
Voc.	client-es	urb-es	-es	-ia
Abl.	client-ibus	urb-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

93.
Stems.

Stems of third declension nouns are found by dropping the final -is of the genitive singular, as in *miles*, gen. *milit*-is, stem *milit*; *caput*, gen. *capit*-is, stem *capit*.

But in the following, called i-stem nouns, the stem has the form of the dative singular:—

(1) Nouns ending (in the nominative singular) in -es or -is, which form the genitive without increasing the number of syllables; as, *civis*, gen. *civis*, stem *civi*; *nubes*, gen. *nubis*, stem *nubi*.

(2) Nouns ending in -s or -x, preceded by a consonant; as, *mons*, gen. *montis*, stem *monti*; *ars*, gen. *artis*, stem *arti*.

(3) Neuter nouns ending in -e, -al or -ar; as *mare*, stem *mari*; *animal*, stem *animali*; *calcar*, stem *calcari*.

94.
Ablative of Place.

RULE 13.—Place where is denoted by the ablative with the preposition *in*.

EXAMPLES.

1. In Gaul, *in Gallia*.
2. In the town, *in oppido*.

95.
Ablative of Time.

RULE 14.—Time when is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

1. In winter, *hieme*.
2. In summer, *aestate*.
3. In the year of the Lord, *anno Domini*.

96.

Vocabulary 9.

NOUNS.

animal, animalis (n.), *animal.*
coniuratio, -onis (f.), *conspiracy.*
finis, finis (m.), *limit;* pl. *territory.*
gladius, gladii (m.), *sword.*
hostis, hostis (m.), *enemy.*
ignis, ignis (m.), *fire.*
Iura, -ae (m.), *the Jura (a mountain range).*
mare, maris (n.), *sea.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain, mount.*
nobilitas, nobilitatis (f.), *nobility.*
pars, partis (f.), *part.*
pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*
Pyrenaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenean.*
Sequani, -orum (m.), (pl.) *the Sequani.*

VERBS.

dividit, (*it*) *divides.*
duxit, (*he*) *led.*
duxerunt, (*they*) *led.*
fecit, (*he*) *made.*
fecerunt, (*they*) *made.*
fluit, (*it*) *flows.*
pertinet, (*it*) *extends.*

PREPS.

WITH ABL.

a, ab, *from.*

WITH ACC.

ad, *near.*
per, *through.*

CONJ.

-que, *and.*

97.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Rhodanus est flumen Galliae.
2. Multa animalia in montibus sunt.
3. Caesar suas copias trans Rhenum duxit.
4. Rhenus per fines Germanorum fluit.
5. Rhenus per fines Germanorum in mare fluit.
6. Coniurationem nobilitatis fecit.
7. Fines Sequanorum inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum sunt.
8. Ex oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.
9. Terra Garumna flumine, Oceano et finibus Belgarum continetur.
10. Ubi fuit Galba, legatus Caesaris?
11. Nonne fuit in finibus Belgarum?
12. Galba cum militibus in finibus Belgarum fuit.
13. Rhodanus provinciam nostram a finibus[1] Helvetiorum dividit.
14. Helvetii agros gladio ignique vastant.
15. Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt.
16. Multi milites in castris sunt.
17. Provincia Aquitania ad Pyrenaeos montes pertinet.
18. Gallia a provincia nostra ad mare pertinet.

---

1 a finibus, *from the territories.*

98.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The river is deep.
2. The rivers are broad.
3. The rivers of Gaul are deep and broad.
4. Where are the territories of the Germans?
5. The territories of the Germans are across the Rhine.
6. Do merchants come into the territories of the Belgians?
7. Merchants often come into the territories of the Belgians.
8. Who is Galba? Is he a lieutenant of Caesar?
9. Galba is a soldier and Caesar's lieutenant.
10. The river Rhine flows between the territories of the Germans and the Belgians.
11. Are the towns and villages of the Germans across the Rhine?
12. The territories of the Germans extend from the Rhine to the sea.
13. Mount Jura separates the territories of the Sequani from the Helvetians.
14. The Sequana flows through Gaul into the sea.

LESSON X.

Third Declension Adjectives.

99.

Adjectives of the Third Declension are declined like the nouns of the Third Declension.

100.

These adjectives are divided into *three classes:*

(1) *Adjectives of three endings.*

That is, adjectives that have a different ending for the nominative singular of each gender, as

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
acer,	acris,	acre,	*sharp, fierce.*

(2) *Adjectives of two endings.*

These have the same ending (-is) in the nom. sing., masc. and fem., and end in -e in the neuter, as

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
fortis,	forte,	*brave.*

(3) *Adjectives of one ending.*

These have the same ending (-x, -ns, etc.) in the nom. sing. of all three genders, as

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
potens,	potens,	potens,	*powerful.*
felix,	felix,	felix,	*happy, prosperous.*

101.

Adjective Stems.

The rules for adjective stems are the same as those given for nouns.

The adjectives of the third declension, with *two endings* (as *tristis, triste; fortis, forte*, etc.) have the *stem* ending in **-i.**

Other i-stem adjectives are *acer, celeber, celer, equester, pedester* and names of months in *-ber.*

The other third declension adjectives have *consonant stems*, but have the *form* of i-stems in the ablative singular (**-i**), the gen. plur. (**-ium**), and the nom., acc. and voc. plur. neuter (**-ia**).

102.

Adjective Forms.

acer, *sharp.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	acer	acr-is	acr-e
Gen.	acr-is	acr-is	acr-is
Dat.	acr-i	acr-i	acr-i
Acc.	acr-em	acr-em	acr-e
Voc.	acer	acr-is	acr-e
Abl.	acr-i	acr-i	acr-i

PLURAL.

Nom.	acr-es	acr-es	acr-ia
Gen.	acr-ium	acr-ium	acr-ium
Dat.	acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus
Acc.	acr-es	acr-es	acr-ia
Voc.	acr-es	acr-es	acr-ia
Abl.	acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus

	brevis, *short.*		**similis,** *like, similar.*	
		SINGULAR.		
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	brev-is	brev-e	simil-is	simil-e
Gen.	brev-is	brev-is	simil-is	simil-is
Dat.	brev-i	brev-i	simil-i	simil-i
Acc.	brev-em	brev-e	simil-em	simil-e
Voc.	brev-is	brev-e	simil-is	simil-e
Abl.	brev-i	brev-i	simil-i	simil-i
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	brev-es	brev-ia	simil-es	simil-ia
Gen.	brev-ium	brev-ium	simil-ium	simil-ium
Dat.	brev-ibus	brev-ibus	simil-ibus	simil-ibus
Acc.	brev-es	brev-ia	simil-es	simil-ia
Voc.	brev-es	brev-ia	simil-es	simil-ia
Abl.	brev-ibus	brev-ibus	simil-ibus	simil-ibus

	audax, *bold.*		**prudens,** *sagacious.*	
		SINGULAR.		
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	audax	audax	prudens	prudens
Gen.	audac-is	audac-is	prudent-is	prudent-is
Dat.	audac-i	audac-i	prudent-i	prudent-i
Acc.	audac-em	audax	prudent-em	prudens
Voc.	audax	audax	prudens	prudens
Abl.	audac-i, -e	audac-i, -e	prudent-i, -e	prudent-i, -e
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	audac-es	audac-ia	prudent-es	prudent-ia
Gen.	audac-ium	audac-ium	prudent-ium	prudent-ium
Dat.	audac-ibus	audac-ibus	prudent-ibus	prudent-ibus
Acc.	audac-es	audac-ia	prudent-es	prudent-ia
Voc.	audac-es	audac-ia	prudent-es	prudent-ia
Abl.	audac-ibus	audac-ibus	prudent-ibus	prudent-ibus

	vetus, *old.*		**altior**, *higher.*	
		SINGULAR.		
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	altior	altius
Gen.	veter-is	veter-is	altior-is	altior-is
Dat.	veter-i	veter-i	altior-i	altior-i
Acc.	veter-em	vetus	altior-em	altius
Voc.	vetus	vetus	altior	altius
Abl.	veter-e, -i	veter-e, -i	altior-e, -i	altior-e, -i
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	veter-es	veter-a	altior-es	altior-a
Gen.	veter-um	veter-um	altior-um	altior-um
Dat.	veter-ibus	veter-ibus	altior-ibus	altior-ibus
Acc.	veter-es	veter-a	altior-es	altior-a
Voc.	veter-es	veter-a	altior-es	altior-a
Abl.	veter-ibus	veter-ibus	altior-ibus	altior-ibus

103.

PARTICIPLE.

amans, *loving.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	amans	amans	amant-es	amant-ia
Gen.	amant-is	amant-is	amant-ium	amant-ium
Dat.	amant-i	amant-i	amant-ibus	amant-ibus
Acc.	amant-em	amans	amant-es	amant-ia
Voc.	amans	amans	amant-es	amant-ia
Abl.	amant-e, -i	amant-e, -i	amant-ibus	amant-ibus

104.

Agreement of Adjectives.

RULE 11.—An adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in gender, number and case.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the Third Declension are used with nouns of any declension; as, *nauta fortis*, a brave sailor *vallum ingens*, a huge wall, etc.

105.

Vocabulary 10.

acer,[1]	acris,[2]	acre,[3]	*sharp, active, fierce.*
brevis,	brevis,	breve,	*short.*
celer,	celeris,	celere,	*swift.*
dives,	dives,	dives,	*rich.*
facilis,	facilis,	facile,	*easy.*
fertilis,	fertilis,	fertile,	*fertile.*
fortis,	fortis,	forte,	*brave.*
ingens,	ingens,	ingens,	*huge, immense.*
nobilis,	nobilis,	nobile,	*noble.*
omnis,	omnis,	omne,	*all.*
potens,	potens,	potens,	*powerful.*
tres,	tres,	tria (pl.),	*three.*

bellicosus, -a, -um, *warlike.*
liber, -a, -um, *free.*
Romanus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
civis, civis (m.), *citizen.*
homo, hominis (m.), *man.*
hostis, hostis (m.), *enemy.*
inimicus, -i (m.), *enemy (personal).*
legio, legionis (f.), *legion.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorigis (m.), *Orgetorix.*
populus, -i (m.), *people.*
vallum, -i (n.), *wall, rampart.*

munivit, (*he*) *fortified, or has fortified.*
muniverunt, (*they*) *fortified, or have fortified.*
duxit, (*he*) *led.*
ducunt, (*they*) *lead.*

1 Masc. 2 Fem. 3 Neuter.

106.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Miles est fortis.
2. Militis sunt fortes.
3. Civitas fuit potens.
4. Civitas Gallorum erit magna et potens.
5. Homines bellicosi sunt et inimici populi Romani.
6. Orgetorix nobilis et dives fuit.
7. Brevi tempore Helvetii in provincia erunt.
8. Galli oppida vallis ingentibus munīverunt.
9. Caesar castra vallo fossaque munivit.
10. Agri Gallorum fertiles sunt.
11. Germani agros fertiles Gallorum gladio ignique vastant.
12. Homines liberi et bellicosi sunt.
13. Homines multos libros magnos habent.
14. Homo liber sum et civis Romanus.
15. In agris fertilibus Gallorum fuit multum frumentum.

107.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Where are our soldiers?
2. The soldiers are in camp, near Geneva.
3. Are our soldiers brave?
4. The Roman soldiers are always brave.
5. Have the citizens fortified the city?
6. The citizens have fortified the city with huge walls.
7. Caesar led his legions across the river.
8. He attacked and conquered the enemy (pl.).
9. In the camp of the enemy (pl.) there were many brave soldiers.
10. The soldiers of Caesar burn the villages of the Germans.
11. In the village there was a large supply of grain.
12. The Helvetians burn all their towns.
13. In a short time, soldiers, we shall be in the territories of the enemy.
14. Our province is bounded by the river Rhone and the territories of the Sequani.
15. The Rhine, a broad and deep river, flows through the territories of the Germans.
16. The victory was not easy, for (nam) the enemy were brave and warlike.
17. The Gauls have a large supply of grain in their villages.
18. Are there many cities in Gaul?
19. The Gauls have not many cities.
20. The soldiers of Galba, the lieutenant of Caesar, are now across the river.

LESSON XI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

108.

In Latin, as in English, there are *three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative and superlative*—which express different degrees of quality.

109.

Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive (dropping the final vowel, if any) the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum

as in the following examples:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
doctus *learned*	doctior *more learned*	doctissimus *most learned*
altus *high*	altior *higher*	altissimus *highest*
levis *light*	levior *lighter*	levissimus *lightest*
sapiens *wise*	sapientior *wiser*	sapientissimus *wisest*
fortis *brave*	fortior *braver*	fortissimus *bravest*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
brevis	brevior	brevissimus
short	*shorter*	*shortest*
felix	felicior	felicissimus
happy	*happier*	*happiest*
potens	potentior	potentissimus
powerful	*more powerful*	*most powerful*
nobilis	nobilior	nobilissimus
noble	*nobler*	*noblest*

110.

Adjectives ending in the positive (nom. sing. masc.) in *-er* form the superlative by adding, *to the positive*, the ending *-rimus*, instead of *-issimus;* as:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
pulcher	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
beautiful	*more beautiful*	*most beautiful*
acer	acrior	acerrimus
sharp	*sharper*	*sharpest*
miser	miserior	miserrimus
wretched	*more wretched*	*most wretched*
celer	celerior	celerrimus
swift	*swifter*	*swiftest*
liber	liberior	liberrimus
free	*freer*	*freest*

111.

Adjectives ending in the positive in *-ilis* are compared regularly, as:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
utilis, *useful*	utilior	utilissimus
nobilis, *noble*	nobilior	nobilissimus

except the following six adjectives, which form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem (with final vowel dropped) instead of *-issimus:*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, *easy*	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior	difficillimus
similis, *like*	similior	simillimus
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior	dissimillimus
humilis, *lowly*	humilior	humillimus
gracilis, *slender*	gracilior	gracillimus

112.

Other adjectives that form the superlative *irregularly* are:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus *outward*	exterior *outer, exterior*	extremus or extimus *outermost, last*
inferus *below*	inferior *lower*	infimus or imus *lowest*
posterus *following*	posterior *later*	postremus or postumus *last*
superus *above*	superior *higher*	supremus or summus *highest*

113.

The following adjectives are *irregular* in both *comparative* and *superlative:*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
bonus	melior	optimus	*good*
malus	peior	pessimus	*bad*
magnus	maior	maximus	*great*
parvus	minor	minimus	*small*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
multus	plus	plurimus	*much*, (pl.) *many*
nequam	nequior	nequissimus	*worthless*
vetus	vetustior	veterrimus	*old, veteran*
senex	senior	maximus natu	*old*
iuvenis	iunior	minimus natu	*young*
dexter	dexterior	dextimus	*on the right, handy*
dives	divitior	ditissimus	*rich*

114.

The following adjectives *have no positive*, the *comparative* and *superlative* being formed from adverbs or prepositions.

[cis, citra]	citerior	citimus
on this side	*hither*	*hithermost*
[in, intra]	interior	intimus
in, within	*inner*	*inmost*
[prae, pro]	prior	primus
before	*former*	*first*
[prope]	propior	proximus
near	*nearer*	*next*
[ultra]	ulterior	ultimus
beyond	*further*	*furthest, last*

115.

Declension of Comparatives.

Comparative forms are thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortior	fortius
Gen.	fortioris	fortioris
Dat.	fortiori	fortiori
Acc.	fortiorem	fortius
Voc.	fortior	fortius
Abl.	fortiore	fortiore

	PLURAL.	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., *Acc.*, *Voc.*	fortiores	fortiora
Gen.	fortiorum	
Dat., *Abl.*	fortioribus	

Write the declension of the comparative of felix, pulcher, facilis and bonus.

OBS. The comparative of **multus** is *irregular*. It is used as a noun in the singular.

116.

Declension of plus, *more* (comp. of multus):

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	——	plus	plures	plura
Gen.	——	pluris	plurium	plurium
Dat.	——	——	pluribus	pluribus
Acc.	——	plus	plures	plura
Voc.	——	plus	plures	plura
Abl.	——	plure	pluribus	pluribus

117.

Declension of Superlative.

All superlatives are declined like *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*.

NOTE.—The rule of agreement of the adjective with its noun applies to the comparative and the superlative degrees, as well as to the positive.

118.

Ablative of Comparison.

RULE 15.—The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative (meaning *than*).

EXAMPLE.

Nauta *milite* fortior est.
The sailor is braver *than the soldier.*

119.

But a form more nearly like the English construction is commonly used. We may express the above sentence as follows:

Nauta est fortior *quam miles.*
The sailor is braver *than the soldier.*

Here *quam* means *than; miles* is in the *nom. case*, subject of *est* understood.

120.

Partitive Genitive.

RULE 16.—Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.

EXAMPLES.

1. Belgae fortissimi *Gallorum* sunt.
The Belgians are the bravest *of the Gauls.*

OBS. This implies that the Belgians are a division or part of the Gauls; *Gallorum* is the *partitive genitive.*

2. Unam partem *Galliae* incolunt.
They inhabit one part *of Gaul.*

Galliae, partitive genitive.

121.

Vocabulary 11.

aedificium, -i (n.), *building, edifice.*
Ariovistus, -i (m.), *Ariovistus.*
consul, consulis (m.), *consul.*
frater, fratris (m.), *brother.*
iter, itineris (n.), *road, march, journey, way.*
lex, legis (f.), *law.*
opus, operis (n.), *work.*
pax, pacis (f.), *peace.*
rex, regis (m.), *king.*
tempus, temporis (n.), *time.*
virtus, virtutis (f.), *bravery, virtue.*

confirmat, (*he*) *establishes, confirms, strengthens.*
confirmant, (*they*) *establish, confirm, strengthen.*
conscripsit, (*he*) *enrolled, enlisted, levied.*
finitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*
privatus, -a, -um, *private.*
longe (adv.), *by far.*
propter (prep. with acc.[1]), *on account of.*

OBS. The *Latin superlative* may be translated like the *English superlative*, or like the *English positive* with *very;* as, **fortissimus,** *bravest* or *very brave*, etc.

1 Preposition followed by the accusative case.

122.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Eramus; erimus; fuistis; fuerant.
2. Sumus; erunt; fuerit; fueras.
3. Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in Gallia est.
4. Copias suas trans Rhenum iam duxit.
5. Iter per fines Sequanorum angustum et difficile fuit.
6. Inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanus fuit.
7. Inter fines Helvetiorum et Sequanorum Rhodanus fluit.
8. Oppidum Geneva finibus Helvetiorum proximum est.
9. Gallorum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae.
10. Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt.
11. Apud Helvetios Orgetorix fuit longe nobilissimus et ditissimus.
12. Cum proximis civitatibus pacem confirmant.
13. Helvetii omnia oppida et aedificia privata comburunt.
14. Iter longissimum et difficillimum est.
15. Helvetii fortiores sunt quam Sequani.
16. Homines liberi sunt, fortissimi et bellicosi.
17. Caesar tres legiones in provincia conscripsit.
18. Populus Romanus Gallis[1] potentior est.
19. Ariovistus, rex potens Germanorum, partem agrorum Sequanorum occupat.
20. Agri Gallorum fertilissimi fuerunt.

---

1 Gallis, ablative of comparison.

123.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The work is difficult.
2. The work is most difficult.
3. The journey through the province will be very difficult.
4. The soldiers of Caesar were very brave.
5. The soldiers were braver than the Gauls.
6. He was the best and wisest of the Romans.
7. He fortified the camp with huge walls.
8. Among the Germans, Ariovistus was the most powerful.
9. Orgetorix is the richest of the Helvetians.
10. Caesar enrolled very many soldiers in Gaul.
11. He made a great conspiracy of the nobility.
12. The Rhine is broader than the Rhone.
13. The Rhine, a very broad and (very) deep river, separates the Belgians from the Germans.
14. They are the fiercest and most warlike of the Gauls.
15. The city is the largest and richest in Gaul.
16. The Jura is a very high mountain.
17. The shortest rivers; the longest journeys.
18. The last town; the shortest time.
19. The wisest men; the most beautiful fields.
20. The best books; the smallest books.

LESSON XII.

Adverbs.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

124.

Formation of Adverbs.

Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives.

(1) From adjectives of the *first and second declension* by changing the final **-o** of the stem (masc.) to **-e**.

EXAMPLES.

ADJ.	STEM.	ADVERB.
altus, *high*	alto	alte, *highly*
latus, *wide*	lato	late, *widely*
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchro	pulchre, *beautifully*
longus, *long*	longo	longe, *far, by far*
liber, *free*	libero	libere, *freely*

(2) From adjectives of the *third declension* by adding **-ter** to the stem.

EXAMPLES.

ADJ.	STEM.	ADVERB.
acer, *eager*	acri	acriter, *eagerly*
fortis, *brave*	forti	fortiter, *bravely*
celer, *swift*	celeri	celeriter, *swiftly*
gravis, *severe*	gravi	graviter, *severely*
prudens, *prudent*	prudent	prudenter,[1] *prudently*
audax, *bold*	audac	audacter,[2] *boldly*
felix, *happy*	felic	feliciter,[2] *happily*

NOTE 1.—When the stem ends in **-nt**, the final **t** of the stem is dropped when **-ter** is added.

NOTE 2.—Other consonant stems are usually treated like i-stems, as in the case of *felic, feliciter*. *Audac, audacter*, is an exception.

(3) Many adverbs are formed in other ways, as *diu, saepe, undique*, etc.

125.

Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs are compared as follows:

(1) The *comparative degree* is the same form as the *nom. neuter sing.* of the *comparative* of the adjective from which it is derived.

(2) The *superlative degree of the adverb* is formed by changing the final syllable of the *superlative* of the adjective to **-e.**

EXAMPLES.

		POSITIVE.	COMP. NEUT.	SUP. NEUT.
1.	ADJ.	latus	latius	latissimum
	ADV.	late	latius	latissime
2.	ADJ.	fortis	fortius	fortissimum
	ADV.	fortiter	fortius	fortissime
3.	ADJ.	acer	acrius	acerrimum
	ADV.	acriter	acrius	acerrime

126.

The comparison of other adverbs before mentioned is as follows:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
audacter	audacius	audacissime
boldly	*more boldly*	*most boldly*
celeriter	celerius	celerrime
swiftly	*more swiftly*	*most swiftly*
graviter, *severely*	gravius	gravissime
prudenter, *prudently*	prudentius	prudentissime
feliciter, *happily*	felicius	felicissime
alte, *highly*	altius	altissime
longe, *far*	longius	longissime
libere, *freely*	liberius	liberrime

129.

The following adverbs are *irregular* or *defective* in their comparison:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bene, *well*	melius	optime
male, *ill, badly*	peius	pessime
parum, *not enough*	minus, *less*	minime, *least*
——	magis, *more*	maxime, *most*
diu, *long*	diutius	diutissime
saepe, *after*	saepius	saepissime
satis, *enough*	satius, *preferable*	——
multum (multo) *much*	plus	plurimum
——	potius, *rather*	potissimum *in preference to all*

OBS. The *superlative* of the Latin adverb may be translated into English in two ways, either as the English *superlative* or as the *positive* with *very;* as, **fortissime,** *most bravely* or *very bravely.*

130.

Vocabulary 12.

(REVIEW THE ADJECTIVES IN LESSON XI.)

ADVERBS.

audacter, *boldly*
bene, *well.*
melius, *better.*
optime, *very well, best*
celeriter, *quickly, swiftly.*
continenter, *continually*
diu, *long.*
fortiter, *bravely.*
libere, *freely.*
longe, *far, by far.*
saepe, *often.*
semper, *always.*

NOUNS.

Allobroges, -um (m. pl.), *the Allobroges.*
causa, -ae (f.), *cause, reason.*
iniuria, -ae (f.), *injury, wrong.*
Labienus, -i (m.), *Labienus.*

VERBS.

duxit, (*he*) *led.*
dixit, (*he*) *said, spoke.*
dixerunt, (*they*) *said, spoke.*
oppugnant, (*they*) *attack.*
pugnant, (*they*) *fight.*

131.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Nostri milites fortes sunt.
2. Nostri milites fortissimi sunt.
3. Milites Caesaris fortiter pugnant.
4. Milites Caesaris fortius pugnant quam Galli.
5. Diu et acriter pugnant.
6. Liberius et audacius dixit.
7. Caesar milites trans flumen celeriter duxit.
8. Labienus, legatus Caesaris, montem celeriter occupat.
9. Ariovistus copias trans flumen duxit.
10. Castra Romanorum audacter oppugnant.
11. Cum Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, bellum continenter gerunt.
12. Cives Romani sumus et amici Caesaris.
13. Iam copiae Germanorum in ripa Rheni sunt.
14. Brevi tempore in agris amicorum nostrorum erunt.
15. Agros Gallorum longe lateque vastant.
16. Liberrime et audacissime dixerunt.

132.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Quickly; very quickly.
2. Well; badly; very freely.
3. They spoke freely and boldly.
4. They boldly attack the camp of the enemy.
5. He is a wise and prudent man.
6. The soldiers fight long and fiercely.
7. The Belgians are by far the bravest of all the Gauls.
8. There were many very brave soldiers in Caesar's camp.
9. Ariovistus boldly led his forces into our province.
10. The river is larger than the Rhone.
11. It flows very swiftly from the mountains into the sea.
12. The ambassadors spoke more boldly and freely about their wrongs.
13. The Germans are laying waste the fields.
14. The inhabitants of the villages fight very bravely.
15. The Romans are better soldiers than the Gauls.

133.

Review Vocabulary.

Nouns.

aedificium, -i (n.), *building, edifice.*
coniuratio, -is (f.), *conspiracy.*
copia, -ae (f.), *supply;* pl., *troops.*
finis, -is (f.), *boundary;* pl., *territories.*
flumen, -is (n.), *river.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch, trench.*
frumentum, -i (n), *grain.*
hostis, -is (m.), *enemy.*
iter, itineris (n.), *road, journey.*
ius, iuris (n.), *right.*
legatio, -is (f.), *embassy.*
legatus, -i (m.), *lieutenant, ambassador.*
legio, legionis (f.), *legion.*
lex, legis (f.), *law.*
lingua, -ae (f.), *language.*
mare, maris (n.), *sea.*
mercator, -is (m.), *merchant.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain.*
multitudo, -is (f.), *multitude.*
nobilitas, -is (f.), *nobility.*
oppidum, -i (n.), *town.*
pars, partis (f.), *part.*
pax, pacis (f.), *peace.*
pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*
tempus, -oris (n.), *time.*
vallum, -i (n.), *wall.*
vicus, -i (m.), *village.*

134.

Review—Accusative and Ablative.

We have learned that the *accusative* is (1) *the case of the direct object*, and (2) that it is also used with certain prepositions, as: **ad,** *to;* **apud,** *among;* **in,** *into;* **inter,** *between, among;* **per,** *through, by;* **post,** *after;* **trans,** *across;* etc.

Also, that the *ablative* is used in many special constructions, as follows:

(1) To express *the means or instrument by or with which* we do something; this is called the *Ablative of Means or Instrument*, and is used *without a preposition.*

(2) To express *the agent by whom* something is done; this is called the *Ablative of Agent*, and is used *with the preposition* **a** or **ab.**

(3) To express *time when, without a preposition.* (*Ablative of Time.*)

(4) To express the *place where, with the preposition* **in.** (*Ablative of Place.*)

(5) To express *accompaniment, with preposition* **cum.** (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*)

(6) To answer the questions, *In what respect?* or *In what particular?* without a preposition. (*Ablative of Specification.*)

(7) To complete the meaning of a comparative. (*Ablative of Comparison.*)

(8) With certain prepositions, as **e** or **ex, pro, in** (*in*), **de,** etc.

[Before beginning Lesson XIV., study *thoroughly* the following plan of the Latin verb, Lesson XIII.]

LESSON XIII.

The Latin Verb.

A GENERAL SCHEME OF CONJUGATION.

135.

Stems.

The stems of the Latin verb are the *present* and the *perfect.*[1]

Present Stem and Simple Tenses.[2]

The *present stem* of a verb is found by dropping the final syllable of the present infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PRES. INF.	PRES. STEM.
amo	ama-re	ama
moneo	mone-re	mone
rego	rege-re	rege
audio	audi-re	audi

136.

From the present stem of the verb are derived:[3]

(1) *The simple tenses*[4]—the present, imperfect, and future indicative.

(2) *The imperative.*

(3) *The present participle.*

(4) *The gerund.*

1 The supine stem is omitted.

2 The simple tenses are often called the present system.

3 The subjunctive and the passive forms are here omitted and will be discussed in succeeding lessons.

4 Sometimes called the *present* system.

(1) THE SIMPLE TENSES.

137.

The *Present Indicative* is formed by adding *to the present stem* the endings:

PERS.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	-o	-mus
2.	-s	-tis
3.	-t	-nt

OBS. In the first and third conjugations, the final vowel (a or e) of the stem is dropped in first person singular, thus: *amo*, instead of *amao; rego*, instead of *regeo*. Also, in the third conj., the final -e of the stem is changed to -i (in second and third pers. sing., and first and second pers. plur.), and to -u in third pers. plur.

138.

The *Imperfect Indicative* is formed by adding *to the present stem* the endings:

PERS.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	-bam	-bamus
2.	-bas	-batis
3.	-bat	-bant

NOTE.—e is added to the stem in fourth conj., before these endings.

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PRES. STEM.	IMP. IND. (1st per. sing.)
1.	amo	ama-	ama-bam
2.	moneo	mone-	mone-bam
3.	rego	rege-	rege-bam
4.	audio	audi-	audie-bam

The full tense of **amo**, for example, being:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amabam	amabamus
amabas	amabatis
amabat	amabant

139.

The *Future Indicative* is formed, *in first and second conjugations*, by adding *to the present stem* the endings:

PERS.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	-bo	-bimus
2.	-bis	-bitis
3.	-bit	-bunt

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PRES. STEM.	FUT. IND. (1st per. sing.)
1.	amo	ama-	ama-bo
2.	moneo	mone-	mone-bo.

140.

The *Future Indicative*, in *third and fourth conjugations*, is formed by adding *to the present stem* the endings:

PERS.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	-am	-emus
2.	-es	-etis
3.	-et	-ent

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PRES. STEM.	FUT. IND. (1st per. sing.)
3.	rego	rege-	reg-am
4.	audio	audi-	audi-am

OBS. The final e of the stem is dropped in the third conjugation verb.

(2) IMPERATIVE.

141.

The *first form of the Imperative* (second pers. sing) is the same as the present stem.

VERB.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. IMP. (2nd per. sing.)
amo	ama-	ama
moneo	mone-	mone
rego	rege-	rege
audio	audi-	audi

142.

The *Imperative* is formed by adding *to the present stem* the endings:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	pres. stem	-te
Fut.	-to	-tote
	-to	-nto

NOTE.—The third pers. plur., future imperative, has the form of the third pers. plur., present indicative, with **-o** added.

(3) THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

143.

The *Present Participle* is formed by adding *to the present stem* the ending **-ns.**

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. PARTICIPLE.
1.	amo	ama-	amans
2.	moneo	mone-	monens
3.	rego	rege-	regens
4.	audio	audi-	audiens

OBS. **-ens** is added in the fourth conjugation.

(4) THE GERUND.

144.

The *Gerund* is formed by dropping the final **-s** of the present participle and adding the endings:

-di -do -dum -do

VERB.	PRES. PART.	GERUND.
amo	amans	amandi
moneo	monens	monendi
rego	regens	regendi
audio	audiens	audiendi

PERFECT TENSES.[1]

145.

The *Perfect Tenses* are formed from the *perfect stem*. The *perfect stem* of any verb is formed by dropping the final **-i** of the perfect (first pers. sing.), always given as the third principal part of the verb.

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT STEM.
1.	amo	amavi	amav-
2.	moneo	monui	monu-
3.	rego	rexi	rex-
4.	audio	audivi	audiv-

146.

From the perfect stem are formed:

(1) *The perfect tenses indicative*[2]—the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect.

(2) *The perfect infinitive, active.*

1 Also known as the Perfect System.

2 Subjunctive and Passive forms are here omitted.

(1) PERFECT TENSES (INDICATIVE).

147.

The *Perfect Tense* of any verb is formed by adding *to the perfect stem* of that verb the endings:

PERS.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	-i	-imus
2.	-isti	-istis
3.	-it	-erunt

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PERF. STEM.	PERF. TENSE.
1.	amo	amav-	amavi, etc.
2.	moneo	monu-	monui, etc.
3.	rego	rex-	rexi, etc.
4.	audio	audiv-	audivi, etc.

148.

The *Pluperfect Tense* (*Indic.*) of any verb is formed by adding, *to the perfect stem*, the *imperfect tense* of the verb **sum**:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eram	-eramus
-eras	-eratis
-erat	-erant

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PERF. STEM.	PLUPERF. (1st per. sing.)
1.	amo	amav-	amav-eram
2.	moneo	monu-	monu-eram
3.	rego	rex-	rex-eram
4.	audio	audiv-	audiv-eram

149.

The *Future Perfect Tense* of any verb is formed by adding, *to the perfect stem* of that verb, the *future tense* of the verb **sum**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ero	erimus
-eris	eritis
-erit	erint (*changed from erunt*)

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PERF. STEM.	FUT. PERF. (1st per. sing.)
1.	amo	amav-	amav-ero
2.	moneo	monu-	monu-ero
3.	rego	rex-	rex-ero
4.	audio	audiv-	audiv-ero

(2) PERFECT INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

150.

The *Perfect Infinitive* (*Active*) of any verb is formed by adding, *to the perfect stem* of that verb, the *present infinitive* of the verb **sum**, changing *-esse* to *-isse*.

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PERF. STEM.	PERF. INFINITIVE.
1.	amo	amav-	amav-isse
2.	moneo	monu-	monu-isse
3.	rego	rex-	rex-isse
4.	audio	audiv-	audiv-isse

151.

The *Future Participle* of any verb is formed by changing the final **-m** of the supine to **-rus.**

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	SUPINE.	FUT. PARTICIPLE.
amo	amatu-m	amatu-rus
moneo	monitu-m	monitu-rus
rego	rectu-m	rectu-rus
audio	auditu-m	auditu-rus

152.

The *Future Infinitive* (*Active*) of any verb is formed by adding *esse* to the *Future Participle.*

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	FUT. PART.	FUT. INFINITIVE.
amo	amaturus	amaturus esse
moneo	moniturus	moniturus esse
rego	recturus	recturus esse
audio	auditurus	auditurus esse

153.

Verb Agreement.

RULE 17.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

154.

The *tenses* of the verb show the *time* of the action; the *moods*, the *manner.*

155.

Use of the Latin Imperfect Indicative.

The *Imperfect Tense*, Indicative Mood, expresses continued action in past time.

EXAMPLES.

1. Germani agros *vastabant.*
   The Germans *were laying waste* the fields.
2. Copias suas *comparabant.*
   They *were getting ready* their forces.

156.

The Latin Perfect.

The *Latin Perfect* has two distinct cases:

(1) It is used to translate the English past tense (or imperfect), not expressing continued action; as: Caesar *conquered* Gaul (Caesar Galliam *vicit*); Cicero was a Roman orator (Cicero *fuit* orator Romanus); they *determined* to do this (hoc facere *constituerunt*). In this use the perfect is called the *Historical Perfect.*

(2) The *Latin Perfect* is also used to express the idea of the ordinary English perfect, in which use it is called the *Perfect Definite.*

EXAMPLES.

1. The Germans *have destroyed* the town.
   Germani oppidum *deleverunt.*
2. Caesar *has conquered* the Gauls.
   Caesar Gallos *vicit.*

LESSON XIV.

First Conjugation—A Verbs.

157.

ACTIVE VOICE.—**Amo**, *I love.*

Present stem, **ama.** *Perfect stem*, **amav.**

Principal parts—**am-o, am-are, am-avi, am-atum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am-o, *I love.*	am-amus, *we love.*
am-as, *you love.*	am-atis, *you love.*
am-at, *he loves.*	am-ant, *they love.*

IMPERFECT.

ama-bam, *I was loving.*	ama-bamus, *we were loving.*
ama-bas, *you were loving.*	ama-batis, *you were loving.*
ama-bat, *he was loving.*	ama-bant, *they were loving.*

FUTURE.

ama-bo, *I shall love.*	ama-bimus, *we shall love.*
ama-bis, *you will love.*	ama-bitis, *you will love.*
ama-bit, *he will love.*	ama-bunt, *they will love.*

PERFECT.

amav-i, *I have loved, or I loved.*	amav-imus, *we have loved, or we loved.*
amav-isti, *you have loved, or you loved.*	amav-istis, *you have loved, or you loved.*
amav-it, *he has loved, or he loved.*	amav-erunt, *they have loved, or they loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amav-eram, *I had loved.*	amav-eramus, *we had loved.*
amav-eras, *you had loved.*	amav-eratis, *you had loved.*
amav-erat, *he had loved.*	amav-erant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amav-ero, *I shall have loved.*	amav-erimus, *we shall have loved.*
amav-eris, *you will have loved.*	amav-eritis, *you will have loved.*
amav-erit, *he will have loved.*	amav-erint, *they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	am-a, *love thou.*	ama-te, *love ye.*
Fut.	ama-to, *thou shalt love.*	ama-tote, *ye shall love.*
	ama-to, *he shall love.*	ama-nto, *they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. am-are, *to love.*	*Pres.* am-ans, *loving.*
Perf. amav-isse, *to have loved.*	*Fut.* amat-urus, *about to love.*
Fut. amat-urus esse, *to be about to love.*	

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. am-andi, *of loving.*	
Dat. am-ando, *for loving.*	
Acc. am-andum, *loving.*	am-atum, *to love.*
Abl. am-ando, *for loving.*	am-atu, *to love, to be loved.*

158.

Learn the principal parts and the meanings of the following verbs:

appello	appellare	appellavi	appellatum	*to call*
comparo	comparare	comparavi	comparatum	*get ready*
concilio	conciliare	conciliavi	conciliatum	*win over* *gain*
confirmo	confirmare	confirmavi	confirmatum	*strengthen*
commeo	commeare	commeavi	commeatum	*visit*
cremo	cremare	cremavi	crematum	*burn*
damno	damnare	damnavi	damnatum	*condemn*
do	dare	dedi	datum	*give*
effemino	effeminare	effeminavi	effeminatum	*weaken*
enuntio	enuntiare	enuntiavi	enuntiatum	*report*
incito	incitare	incitavi	incitatum	*excite* *incite*
occupo	occupare	occupavi	occupatum	*occupy* *seize*
oppugno	oppugnare	oppugnavi	oppugnatum	*attack*
paro	parare	paravi	paratum	*prepare* *get ready*
porto	portare	portavi	portatum	*carry*
praesto	praestare	praestiti	praestitum	*excel*
probo	probare	probavi	probatum	*prove*
specto	spectare	spectavi	spectatum	*look at*
spero	sperare	speravi	speratum	*hope*
vasto	vastare	vastavi	vastatum	*lay waste* *devastate*

159.

Vocabulary 13.

(Study also the verbs in Section 158.)

Aedui, -orum (m. pl.), *the Aedui.*
carrus, -i (m.), *cart.*
civitas, civitatis (f.), *state.*
concilium, -i (n.), *council.*
eques, equitis (m.), *horseman;* pl. *cavalry.*
frumentum, -i (n.), *grain.*
iumentum, -i (n.), *beast of burden.*
Labienus, -i (m.), *Labienus* (*one of Caesar's lieutenants*).
legio, legionis (f.), *legion.*
liberi, -orum (m. pl.), *children.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain.*
populus, -i (m.), *people.*
Sequani, -orum (m. pl.), *the Sequani.*
uxor, uxoris (f.), *wife.*
vigilia, -ae (f.), *watch* (*military term*).
primus, -a, -um, *first.*
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*
tres, tria (pl.), *three.*
convoco, -are, -avi, -atum, *to call together.*
expugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to storm, capture.*
pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to fight.*
non (adv.), *not.*
quam (with superlative), *as much as possible;* as,

quam maximus numerus, *the greatest possible number.*

RULE 17.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

282090

160.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. appellamus
2. enuntiaverunt
3. datis
4. dabimus
5. dederant
6. comparabant
7. conciliabunt
8. damnaveramus
9. incitare
10. oppugnavisse
11. probaverimus
12. parate
13. praestant
14. spectabitis
15. sperant
16. probaturus esse
17. cremavimus
18. confirmavit
19. commeant
20. effeminare

161.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Galli militibus frumentum dabunt.
2. Tértia vigilia oppidum oppugnabimus.
3. Helvetii omnibus Gallis[1] virtute[2] praestant[3].
4. Iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum comparant.
5. Pacem et amicitiam cum proximis civitatibus confirmant.
6. Helvetii agros Aeduorum iam populabant.
4. Tertia vigilia Labienus montem occupaverit.
8. Pro salute oppidi pugnate, cives.
9. Concilium omnium Gallorum convocabimus.
10. Hostes tertiam partem nostrorum agrorum occupaverunt.
11. Vicos et oppida occupabunt et agros vastabunt.
12. In ripa fluminis nostrae legiones fortiter pugnabant.
13. Frumentum in vicis cremaverant et agros vastabant.
14. De tertia vigilia cum tribus legionibus castra hostium oppugnavit.
15. Quam maximum numerum equitum paraverint.
16. Ad Belgas mercatores non saepe commeant.

---

1 *Dative*, object of *praestant*. 2 See p. (6). 3 See p.

162.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They had called. We shall have prepared.
2. We shall give. He had given.
3. I shall have proved. He had hoped.
4. We were looking at. He attacked.
5. The soldiers were attacking the town.
6. We shall prepare the largest possible supply of grain.
7. The enemy bravely attacked our camp.
8. About the second watch we shall attack the enemy.
9. The enemy had seized the villages and were laying waste the fields.
10. At daybreak[1] our soldiers stormed the town.
11. Fight bravely, citizens, for your fatherland.
12. In a short time, soldiers, you will have conquered the enemy.
13. We have been and we shall always be friends of the Roman people.
14. The citizens had fought most bravely for their wives and children.
15. In the third year of the war, the soldiers of Caesar had occupied the greater part of Gaul.

1 *prima luce.*

LESSON XV.

Second Conjugation—E Verbs.

163.

ACTIVE VOICE.—**Moneo,** *I advise.*

Present stem, **mone.** *Perfect stem*, **monu.**

Principal parts—**mone-o, mon-ere, mon-ui, mon-itum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mon-eo, *I advise.*	mon-emus, *we advise.*
mon-es, *you advise.*	mon-etis, *you advise.*
mon-et, *he advises.*	mon-ent, *they advise.*

IMPERFECT.

mone-bam, *I was advising.*	mone-bamus, *we were advising*
mone-bas, *you were advising.*	mone-batis, *you were advising*
mone-bat, *he was advising.*	mone-bant, *they were advising*

FUTURE.

mone-bo, *I shall advise.*	mone-bimus, *we shall advise.*
mone-bis, *you will advise.*	mone-bitis, *you will advise.*
mone-bit, *he will advise.*	mone-bunt, *they will advise.*

PERFECT.

monu-i, *I have advised, or I advised.*	monu-imus, *we have advised, or we advised.*
monu-isti, *you have advised, or you advised.*	monu-istis, *you have advised, or you advised.*
monu-it, *he has advised, or he advised.*	monu-erunt, *they have advised, or they advised.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monu-eram, *I had advised.*	monu-eramus, *we had advised.*
monu-eras, *you had advised.*	monu-eratis, *you had advised.*
monu-erat, *he had advised.*	monu-erant, *they had advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

monu-ero, *I shall have advised.*	monu-erimus, *we shall have advised.*
monu-eris, *you will have advised.*	monu-eritis, *you will have advised.*
monu-erit, *he will have advised.*	monu-erint, *they will have advised.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	mon-e, *advise thou.*	mone-te, *advise ye.*
Fut.	mone-to, *thou shalt advise.*	mone-tote, *they shall advise.*
	mone-to, *he shall advise.*	mone-nto, *they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. mon-ere, *to advise.*	mon-ens, *advising.*
Perf. monu-isse, *to have advised.*	
Fut. monit-urus esse, *to be about to advise.*	monit-urus, *about to advise.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. mon-endi, *of advising.*	
Dat. mon-endo, *for advising.*	
Acc. mon-endum, *advising.*	monit-um, *to advise.*
Abl. mon-endo, *by advising.*	monit-u, *to advise, to be advised.*

164.

Learn the principal parts and the meanings of the following verbs:

contineo	continere	continui	contentum	*bound*
deleo	delere	delevi	deletum	*destroy*
habeo	habere	habui	habitum	*have, hold*
iubeo	iubere	iussi	iussum	*order*
moveo	movere	movi	motum	*move*
obtineo	obtinere	obtinui	obtentum	*hold, obtain*
pateo	patere	patui	(no supine)	*extend*; *be open*
permoveo	permovere	permovi	permotum	*influence*
persuadeo	persuadere	persuasi	persuasum	*persuade*
pertineo	pertinere	pertinui	(no supine)	*pertain to*; *extend*
prohibeo	prohibere	prohibui	prohibitum	*prevent*; *keep out*
video	videre	vidi	visum	*see*

165.

When we wish to express, in Latin, the words "*the city of Rome*," we use the form "*the city Rome*." That is, *Rome* is *in apposition* to the word *city*, and not in the genitive case, as we might suppose.

EXAMPLES.

1. Urbem *Carthaginem* delevit.
   He destroyed the city *of Carthage*.

(*Carthaginem* in acc. sing., in apposition to *urbem*.)

2. Oppidum *Ocelum* est magnum.
   The town *of Ocelum* is large.

(*Ocelum* in nom. sing., in apposition to *oppidum*.)

166.

Vocabulary 14.

Aedui, -orum (m. pl.), *the Aedui.*
Allobroges, -um (m. pl.), *the Allobroges.*
Aquitani, -orum (m. pl.), *the Aquitanians.*
carrus, -i (m.), *cart, wagon.*
deditio, -nis (f.), *surrender.*
impedimentum -i (n.), *hindrance* (pl. *baggage*).
imperium, -i (n.), *chief power.*
iumentum, -i (n.), *beast of burden.*
legatus, -i (m.), *lieutenant, envoy.*
matrimonium, -i (n.), *marriage.*
in matrimonium dare, *to give in marriage.*
coniuro, -are, -avi, -atum, *to plot against, conspire.*
fugo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to put to flight.*
hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to winter.*
ibi (adv.), *there, in that place.*
facile (adv.), *easily.*

PREPS. WITH ACC.

contra, *against.*
inter, *between, among.*

---

eodem die, *on the same day.*

167.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. habuit	6. permovimus	11. obtinuerimus
2. habuerit	7. prohibebimus	12. continet
3. habuerant	8. persuadebat	13. movistis
4. delens	9. persuaserunt	14. persuasit
5. patere	10. iubet.	15. iubebamus.

168.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Belgae contra populum Romanum coniurabant.
2. Milites Caesaris in provincia hiemabant.
3. Caesar copias in fines Aeduorum duxit et ibi hiemavit.
4. Flumen Rhodanus, altissimum et latissimum, provinciam continet.
5. Populus Romanus Aeduos fratres appellavit.
6. Legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt.[1]
7. Castico[2] filiam suam in matrimonium dat.
8. Eodem die castra movit et legiones trans flumen duxit.
9. Romani oppida multa et magna expugnaverunt.
10. Ariovistus suas copias trans Rhenum duxit.
11. Multos vicos parvos delevit et agros vastavit.
12. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, est Geneva.
13. Trans Rhodanum multos vicos habebant.
14. Suus pater regnum in[3] Sequanis obtinuerat.
15. Helvetii suis finibus Germanos prohibent.
16. Numerum magnum equitum semper habebat.

1 They send. 2 To Casticus. 3 Among.

169.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He persuaded. We had advised.
2. They will have obtained. He had had.
3. They were moving. We shall prevent.
4. The Romans have conquered the Gauls.
5. On the same day we moved the camp.
6. The Germans easily conquered the Aedui.
7. The Helvetians will hold back the Germans from their territories.
8. They have the largest possible number of beasts of burden and carts.
9. Casticus had held the chief power in his state.
10. The Aquitani are nearest to our province.
11. Are not the Helvetians braver than the Aedui?
12. The Helvetians fight more bravely than the Aedui.
13. The envoys warned[1] our soldiers.
14. We shall keep the enemy from our territories.
15. The shortest road into further Gaul is through the mountains.

---

1 Warned, *monuerunt*.

LESSON XVI.

Third Conjugation—Personal Pronouns.

170.

ACTIVE VOICE.—**Rego,** *I rule.*

Present stem, **rege.** *Perfect stem,* **rex.**

Principal parts—**reg-o, reg-ere, rex-i, rec-tum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg-o, *I rule.*	reg-imus, *we rule.*
reg-is, *you rule.*	reg-itis, *you rule.*
reg-it, *he rules.*	reg-unt, *they rule.*

IMPERFECT.

rege-bam, *I was ruling.*	rege-bamus, *we were ruling.*
rege-bas, *you were ruling.*	rege-batis, *you were ruling.*
rege-bat, *he was ruling.*	rege-bant, *they were ruling.*

FUTURE.

reg-am, *I shall rule.*	reg-emus, *we shall rule.*
reg-es, *you will rule.*	reg-etis, *you will rule.*
reg-et, *he will rule.*	reg-ent, *they will rule.*

PERFECT.

rex-i, *I have ruled, or I ruled.*	rex-imus, *we have ruled.*
rex-isti, *you have ruled.*	rex-istis, *you have ruled.*
rex-it, *he has ruled.*	rex-erunt, *they have ruled.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rex-eram, *I had ruled.*	rex-eramus, *we had ruled.*
rex-eras, *you had ruled.*	rex-eratis, *you had ruled.*
rex-erat, *he had ruled.*	rex-erant, *they had ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

rex-ero, *I shall or will have ruled.*	rex-erimus, *we will have ruled.*
rex-eris, *you will have ruled.*	rex-eritis, *you will have ruled.*
rex-erit, *he will have ruled.*	rex-erint, *they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	reg-e, *rule thou.*	reg-ite, *rule ye.*
Fut.	reg-ito, *thou shalt rule.*	reg-itote, *ye shall rule.*
	reg-ito, *he shall rule.*	reg-unto, *they shall rule.*

	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	reg-ere, *to rule.*	reg-ens, *ruling.*
Perf.	rex-isse, *to have ruled.*	
Fut.	rect-urus esse, *to be about to rule.*	rect-urus, *about to rule.*

	GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen.	reg-endi, *of ruling.*	
Dat.	reg-endo, *for ruling.*	
Acc.	reg-endum, *ruling.*	rect-um, *to rule.*
Abl.	reg-endo, *by ruling.*	rect-u, *to rule, to be ruled.*

171.

Study principal parts and meanings of following verbs:

adduco	adducere	adduxi	adductum	*induce*
adscisco	adsciscere	adscivi	adscitum	*attach*
ago	agere	egi	actum	*act, do*
attingo	attingere	attigi	attactum	*touch*
coemo	coemere	coemi	coemptum	*buy*
cogo	cogere	coegi	coactum	*compel*; *collect*
comburo	comburere	combussi	combustum	*burn*
conduco	conducere	conduxi	conductum	*bring together*
conscisco	consciscere	conscivi	conscitum	*resolve*
conscribo	conscribere	conscripsi	conscriptum	*to enroll*; *levy*
constituo	constituere	constitui	constitutum	*determine*
contendo	contendere	contendi	contentum	*fight, hasten*
deligo	deligere	delegi	delectum	*select*
dico	dicere	dixi	dictum	*say*
divido	dividere	divisi	divisum	*divide*
duco	ducere	duxi	ductum	*lead*
exuro	exurere	exussi	exustum	*burn*
gero	gerere	gessi	gestum	*carry on*
incendo	incendere	incendi	incensum	*burn*
incolo	incolere	incolui	(no supine)	*inhabit*
induco	inducere	induxi	inductum	*induce*
lego	legere	legi	lectum	*read*
mitto	mittere	misi	missum	*send*
praecedo	praecedere	praecessi	praecessum	*excel*
scribo	scribere	scripsi	scriptum	*write*
suppeto	suppetere	suppetivi	suppetitum	*be on hand*
vergo	vergere	——	——	*slope*
vinco	vincere	vici	victum	*conquer*

172.

Personal Pronouns.

(1) FIRST PERSON.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	ego, *I.*	nos, *we.*
Gen.	mei, *of me, my.*	nostrum, nostri, *of us, our.*
Dat.	mihi, *to or for me.*	nobis, *to or for us.*
Acc.	me, *me.*	nos, *we.*
Voc.	——	——
Abl.	me, (*by*) *me*	nobis, (*by*) *us.*

(2) SECOND PERSON

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	tu, *you.*	vos, *you.*
Gen.	tui, *of you, your.*	vestrum, vestri, *of you, your.*
Dat.	tibi, *to or for you.*	vobis, *to or for you.*
Acc.	te, *you.*	vos, *you.*
Voc.	tu, *you.*	vos, *you.*
Abl.	te, (*by*) *you.*	vobis, (*by*) *you.*

(3) THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE PRONOUN).

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	——	——
Gen.	sui, *of himself.*[1]	sui, *of themselves.*
Dat.	sibi, *to or for himself.*	sibi, *to or for themselves.*
Acc.	se,[2] *himself.*	se,[2] *themselves.*
Voc.	——	——
Abl.	se,[2] (*by*) *himself.*	se,[2] (*by*) *themselves.*

1 Or herself, or itself. 2 Or *sese.*

173.

A personal pronoun subject is often indicated by the verb ending, but

(1) It may be expressed by the separate personal pronoun for the sake of emphasis; and

(2) When the sentence is composed of two or more independent clauses and a *personal pronoun subject occurs in one or both of the clauses*, this subject must be expressed, in Latin, by the personal pronoun, and not merely indicated by the verb ending.

174.

Vocabulary 13.

arma, armorum (n. pl.), *arms, weapons.*
aedificium, -i (n.), *building.*
bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
causa, -ae (f), *cause, case.*
cliens, clientis (m.), *client.*
familia, -ae (f.), *clan.*
judicium, -i (n.), *trial.*
obses, -idis (m.), *hostage.*
pax, pacis (f.), *peace.*
privatus, -a, -um, *private.*
reliquus, -a, -am, *remaining.*
cingo, -ere, cinxi, cinctum, *to surround.*
conduco, -ere, conduxi, conductum, *to bring together.*
dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditum, *to surrender.*
undique (adv.), *from all quarters.*
eodem (adv.), *to the same place.*
paene (adv.), *almost.*
-que (conj.), *and.*
sua (n. pl.), *their possession.*

175.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. attingit
2. attingunt
3. comburunt
4. coemere
5. constituerunt
6. contendit
7. contenderunt
8. delegerant
9. gesserant
10. gerebat
11. incolunt
12. incendunt
13. incenderatis
14. dividit
15. diviserunt
16. praecedunt
17. dixerunt
18. dixerint
19. duxerunt
20. dixit

176.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Orgetorigem causam dicere[1] coegerunt.
2. Omnia oppida sua, vicos et reliqua privata aedificia incendunt.
3. Frumentum omne comburunt.
4. Nos, milites, oppida hostium delebimus.
5. Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt.
6. Nos pacem amamus; vos bellum amatis.
7. Se suaque Caesari dediderunt.
8. Mea provincia est Britannia, tua Gallia.
9. Amici mei, pro patria fortiter pugnate.
10. Helvetii copiam magnam armorum in castris habuerunt.
11. Labienus in fines Sequanorum tres legiones duxerat.
12. Caesar oppidum delevit et omnes agros vastavit.
13. Iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum[2] numerum coemere constituerunt.
14. Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam undique coegit.

---

1 Causam dicere, *to plead his case.* 2 See p.

177.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. We are good; you are bad.
2. We are better than you.
3. The Helvetians surrendered themselves and all their possessions to Caesar.
4. Our town is larger than yours.
5. I, soldiers, will lead you against the enemy.
6. A river surrounded almost the entire town.
7. They give hostages to each other.[1]
8. We shall wage war on the Germans, our enemies.
9. The Helvetians will send ambassadors to me.
10. Caesar had already enrolled three legions in Gaul.
11. I am writing; you (sing.) are reading.
12. We, citizens, shall send ambassadors to Caesar.
13. The soldiers of Caesar destroyed the whole town.
14. The Belgians keep the Germans out of their territories.
15. Ariovistus led a great number of the Germans across the Rhine into the territories of the Gauls.
16. He conquered the forces of the Gauls and burned many towns and villages.

1 Literally, among themselves, *inter se*.

LESSON XVII.

Fourth Conjugation—I Verbs.

RELATIVE PRONOUN. RELATIVE CAUSE.

178.

ACTIVE VOICE.—**Audio,** *I hear.*

Present stem, **audi.** *Perfect stem,* **audiv.**

Principal parts—**aud-io, aud-ire, aud-ivi, aud-itum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aud-io, *I hear.*	aud-imus, *we hear.*
aud-is, *you hear.*	aud-itis, *you hear.*
aud-it, *he hears.*	aud-iunt, *they hear.*

IMPERFECT.

audi-ebam, *I was hearing, or I heard.*	audi-ebamus, *we were hearing*
audi-ebas, *you were hearing.*	audi-ebatis, *you were hearing.*
audi-ebat, *he was hearing.*	audi-ebant, *they were hearing.*

FUTURE.

aud-iam, *I shall hear.*	aud-iemus, *we shall hear.*
aud-ies, *you will hear.*	aud-ietis, *you will hear.*
aud-iet, *he will hear.*	aud-ient, *they will hear.*

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiv-i, *I have heard, or I heard.*	audiv-imus, *we have heard.*
audiv-isti, *you have heard.*	audiv-istis, *you have heard.*
audiv-it, *he has heard.*	audiv-erunt. *they have heard.*

PLUPERFECT.

audiv-eram, *I had heard.*	audiv-eramus, *we had heard.*
audiv-eras, *you had heard.*	audiv-eratis, *you had heard.*
audiv-erat, *he had heard.*	audiv-erant, *they had heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

audiv-ero, *I shall have heard.*	audiv-erimus, *we shall have heard.*
audiv-eris, *you will have heard.*	audiv-eritis, *you will have heard.*
audiv-erit, *he will have heard.*	audiv-erint, *they will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE.

aud-i, *hear thou.*	aud-ite, *hear ye.*
aud-ito, *thou shalt hear.*	aud-itote, *ye shall hear.*
aud-ito, *he shall hear.*	aud-iunto, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. aud-ire, *to hear.*	aud-iens, *hearing.*
Perf. audiv-isse, *to have heard.*	
Fut. audit-urus esse, *to be about to hear.*	audit-urus, *about to hear.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. audien-di, of *hearing.*	
Dat. audien-do, *for hearing.*	
Acc. audien-dum, *hearing.*	audit-um, *to hear.*
Abl. audien-do, *by hearing.*	audit-u, *to hear, to be heard.*

179.

The Relative Pronoun.

qui—*who, which, what, that.*

	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quo	qua	quo
	Plural.		
Nom.	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

180.

Agreement of Relative Pronoun.

Rule 18.—The relative pronoun agrees with its **antecedent** in gender, number and person, but not in **case.**

(1) The *antecedent* of a relative pronoun is the **noun** or pronoun to which it relates or refers.

(2) The *case* of a relative pronoun depends on the **use** of the pronoun in the clause in which it occurs, and **has** no reference to the case of the antecedent.

181.

Relative Clauses.

A *clause* introduced by a relative pronoun is called a *relative clause.*

EXAMPLE.

Germani, *qui trans Rhenum incolunt*, fortes sunt.
The Germans, *who dwell across the Rhine*, are brave.

182.

Vocabulary 16.

Cicero, -onis (m.), *Cicero.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch, trench.*
pater, patris (m.), *father.*
patria, -ae (f.), *native land, country.*
vallum, -i (n.), *wall, rampart.*
facile, *easy.*
quoque, *also.*
tum, *then.*
divisus, -a, -um, *divided.*
conscribo, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *to enroll, enlist.*
custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *to guard.*
gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, *to wage;*
bellum gerere, *to wage war.*
munio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *to fortify.*
praecedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *to precede.*
subduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead up, withdraw.*

183.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Audiveram; audiverint.
2. Audiebat; audietis.
3. Munivit; munient.
4. Muniet; munivistis.
5. Custodiebant; custodimus.
6. Munite; munivisse.
7. Castra vallo fossaque munivit.
8. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit.
9. Milites hostes facile vicerunt.
10. Labienus montem occupaverat et nostros exspectabat.
11. Proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum[1] continenter bellum gerunt.
12. Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt.
13. (*a*) Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; (*b*) quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani; (*c*) tertiam qui ipsorum[2] lingua Celtae, nostra[3] Galli appellantur.
14. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam (that) partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet.
15. Caesar fuit imperator Romanus, cuius milites Galliam superaverunt.

---

1 Quibuscum for cum quibus, *with whom*.
2 Ipsorum lingua, *in their language*.
3 *Nostra* modifies *lingua*, understood.

184.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Of whom (m. sing.); of whom (m. pl.); by whom (pl.).
2. They have fortified; they were fortifying.
3. They fortified; they had fortified.
4. We shall fortify the camp with a wall and a ditch.
5. Cicero, whom the Romans called the father of his country, was a celebrated author.
6. Caesar waged war on the Helvetians, who were called in their own[1] language Celts.
7. He led the troops which he had collected to the river Rhone.
8. A river which is very broad divides the city into two parts.
9. They determined to wage war with the Gauls.
10. Caesar led into Gaul the two legions which he had enrolled.
11. He burned the town which he had seized.
12. They are nearest to the Allobroges, who dwell across the Rhone.
13. He is coming with all the soldiers that he has enlisted.
14. About[2] the fourth watch we shall attack the camp of the enemy.

---

1 Their own, *sua*. 2 About, *de*.

LESSON XVIII.

The Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice.

HORTATORY AND OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. FINAL CLAUSES.

185.

PRESENT TENSE.

The *Present Tense* of the Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice, is formed by adding, *to the present stem* of the given verb, the following endings:

In 1st Conj.	In 2d, 3d and 4th Conj.
SINGULAR:	
-em[1]	-am[1]
-es	-as
-et	-at
PLURAL.	
-emus	-amus
-etis	-atis
-ent	-ant

NOTE 1.—In first and third conjugations the final vowel of the stem is dropped before the ending. Thus: *am-em* instead of *ama-em*; *reg-am* instead of *rege-am*.

186.

IMPERFECT TENSE, SUBJUNCTIVE.

The first person singular of the *Imperfect Subjunctive* (*Active*) of any verb has the form of the *Present Infinitive* with -m added to it.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PRES. INF. ACT.	IMP. SUBJ. (ACT.)
amo	amare	amare-m
moneo	monere	monere-m
rego	regere	regere-m
audio	audire	audire-m

The full tense is formed with the following endings added to the *present infinitive form:*

SING.	PLUR.
-m	-mus
-s	-tis
-t	-nt

187.

THE PERFECT TENSE, SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *Perfect Subjunctive* (*Active*) is formed by adding, *to the perfect stem* of the given verb, the endings:

SING.	PLUR.
-erim	-erimus
-eris	-eritis
-erit	-erint

188.

PLUPERFECT TENSE, SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* (*Active*) is formed by adding, *to the perfect stem* of the given verb, the *imperfect subjunctive* of **sum**, changing first **e** of **essem** to **i**, as follows:

SING.	PLUR.
-issem	-issemus
-isses	-issetis
-isset	-issent

NOTE.—The subjunctive of *sum* is formed irregularly in the Present Tense, but in other tenses according to above rules.

Subjunctive Forms.

189.

Verb Sum.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim, *may I be.*	simus, *let us be.*
sis, *may you be.*	sitis, *be ye, may you be.*
sit, *let him be, may he be.*	sint, *let them be.*

IMPERFECT.

essem, *I should be.*	essemus, *we should be.*
esses, *you would be.*	essetis, *you should be.*
esset, *he would be.*	essent, *they would be.*

PERFECT.

fu-erim, *I may have been.*	fu-erimus, *we may have been.*
fu-eris, *you may have been.*	fu-eritis, *you may have been.*
fu-erit, *they may have been.*	fu-erint, *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

fu-issem, *I should have been.*	fu-issemus, *we should have been.*
fu-isses, *you would have been.*	fu-issetis, *you would have been.*
fu-isset, *he would have been.*	fu-issent, *they would have been.*

190.

Subjunctive of Amo.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am-em, *may I love.*	am-emus, *let us love.*
am-es, *may you love.*	am-etis, *may you love.*
am-et, *let him love.*	am-ent, *let them love.*

IMPERFECT.

am-arem, *I should love.*	am-aremus, *we should love.*
am-ares, *you would love.*	am-aretis, *you should love.*
am-aret, *he should love.*	am-arent, *they should love.*

PERFECT.

amav-erim, *I may have loved.*	amav-erimus, *we may have loved.*
amav-eris, *you may have loved.*	amav-eritis, *you may have loved.*
amav-erit, *he may have loved.*	amav-erint, *they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amav-issem, *I should have loved.*	amav-issemus, *we should have loved.*
amav-isses, *you would have loved.*	amav-issetis, *you would have loved.*
amav-isset, *he would have loved.*	amav-issent, *they would have loved.*

191.

Subjunctive of Moneo.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mon-eam, *may I advise.*	mon-eamus, *let us advise.*
mon-eas, *may you advise.*	mon-eatis, *may you advise.*
mon-eat, *let him advise.*	mon-eant, *let them advise.*

IMPERFECT.

mon-erem, *I should advise.*	mon-eremus, *we should advise.*
mon-eres, *you would advise.*	mon-eretis, *you would advise.*
mon-eret, *he would advise.*	mon-erent, *they would advise.*

PERFECT.

monu-erim, *I may have advised.*	monu-erimus, *we may have advised.*
monu-eris, *you may have advised.*	monu-eritis, *you may have advised.*
monu-erit, *he may have advised.*	monu-erint, *they may have advised.*

PLUPERFECT.

monu-issem, *I should have advised.*	monu-issemus, *we should have advised.*
monu-isses, *you would have advised.*	monu-issetis, *you would have advised.*
monu-isset, *he would have advised.*	monu-issent, *they would have advised.*

192.

Subjunctive of Rego.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
reg-am, *may I rule.*	reg-amus, *let us rule.*
reg-as, *may you rule.*	reg-atis, *may you rule.*
reg-at, *let him rule.*	reg-ant, *let them rule.*

IMPERFECT.

reg-erem, *I should rule.*	reg-eremus, *we should rule.*
reg-eres, *you would rule.*	reg-eretis, *you would rule.*
reg-eret, *he would rule.*	reg-erent, *they would rule.*

PERFECT.

rex-erim, *I may have ruled.*	rex-erimus, *we may have ruled.*
rex-eris, *you may have ruled.*	rex-eritis, *you may have ruled.*
rex-erit, *he may have ruled.*	rex-erint, *they may have ruled.*

PLUPERFECT.

rex-issem, *I should have ruled.*	rex-issemus, *we should have ruled.*
rex-isses, *you would have ruled.*	rex-issetis, *you would have ruled.*
rex-isset, *he would have ruled.*	rex-issent, *they would have ruled.*

193.

Subjunctive of Audio.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aud-iam, *may I hear.*	aud-iamus, *let us hear.*
aud-ias, *may you hear.*	aud-iatis, *may you hear.*
aud-iat, *let him hear.*	aud-iant, *let them hear.*

IMPERFECT.

aud-irem, *I should hear.*	aud-iremus, *we should hear.*
aud-ires, *you would hear.*	aud-iretis, *you would hear.*
aud-iret, *he would hear.*	aud-irent, *they would hear.*

PERFECT.

audiv-erim, *I may have heard.*	audiv-erimus, *we may have heard.*
audiv-eris, *you may have heard.*	audiv-eritis, *you may have heard.*
audiv-erit, *he may have heard.*	audiv-erint, *they may have heard.*

PLUPERFECT.

audiv-issem, *I should have heard.*	audiv-issemus, *we should have heard.*
audiv-isses, *you would have heard.*	audiv-issetis, *you would have heard.*
audiv-isset, *he would have heard.*	audiv-issent, *they would have heard.*

Some Uses of the Subjunctive.

194.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 19.—The Subjunctive is used to express an exhortation or a concession.

EXAMPLES.

1. Urbem *oppugnemus.*
   Let us attack the city.
2. Oratorem *audiamus.*
   Let us hear the orator.

195.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 20.—The Subjunctive is used to express a wish.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cives patriam *ament.*
   May the citizens *love* their country.
2. Milites fortiter *pugnent.*
   May the soldiers *fight* bravely.
3. Utinam cives patriam *amarent.*
   Would that the citizens *might love* their country.

196.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

RULE 21.—The subjunctive, with *ut* (negative *ne*) and *qui* is used to express the purpose of an action.

197.

The clause expressing purpose is called a *final clause.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Venio *ut audiam.*
   I come *that I may hear*, or, I come *to hear.*

2. Veni *ut audiam.*
   I have come *that I may hear*, or, I have come *to hear.*

3. Veni *ut audirem.*
   I came *that I might hear*, or, I came *to hear.*

4. Veniebam *ut audirem.*
   I was coming *that I might hear*, or, I was coming *to hear.*

5. Veniam (fut.) *ut audiam.*
   I shall come *that I may hear*, or, I shall come *to hear.*

198.

Study the above examples. Observe that *the tense of the Subjunctive in the clause of purpose depends on the tense of the verb in the principal clause;* and that after the *Present, Future, Perfect Definite* or *Future Perfect Indicative* in the principal clause, we have the *Present Subjunctive* in the *clause of purpose*, as in Exs. 1, 2, 5; and that, *after the other tenses* (including the historical perfect) *of the Indicative in the principal clause, we have the Imperfect Subjunctive in the clause of purpose.*

OTHER EXAMPLES.

6. Oraverunt *ne Caesar agros vastaret.*
   They prayed *that Caesar would not lay waste the fields.*

7. Equites misit *qui impetum sustinerent.*
   He sent horsemen *to sustain (who should sustain) the attack.*

199.

The *use of tenses* in the clause of purpose may be better shown by the following table:

After Indicative	Present, Future, Perfect definite, Fut. Perfect,	use the Pres. Subjunctive.
After Indicative	Imperfect, Historical perfect, Pluperfect,	use the Imp. Subjunctive.

RULE 22.—Most verbs meaning to *please*, *displease*, *obey*, *injure*, *persuade*, *command*, *serve*, *resist*, etc., have an object in the Dative Case, instead of the Accusative.

Thus the *Dative* is used with **impero**, *to order;* **noceo**, *to injure;* **pareo**, *to obey;* **placeo**, *to please;* **servio**, *to serve;* **persuadeo**, *to persuade*, etc.

But **iubeo**, *to order;* **delecto**, *to please*, take the *Accusative*.

200.

Vocabulary 17.

epistula, -ae (f.), *letter.*
eques, equitis (m.), *horseman*, pl. *cavalry.*
equus, equi (m.), *horse.*
pax, pacis (f.), *peace.*
pecunia, -ae (f.), *money.*
rex, regis (m.), *king.*
Suessiones, -um (m. pl.), *the Suessiones.*
fortiter (adv.), *bravely.*
expugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to attack, to storm.*
gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, *to wage, to carry on.*
impero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to order, command.*
mitto, -ere, misi, missum, *to send.*
oro, -are, -avi, -atum, *to pray, beg, beseech.*
pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to fight.*
venio, -ire, veni, ventum, *to come.*
vinco, -ere, vici, victum, *to conquer.*

ne (adv.), *not, lest, in order that not.*

201.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Moneat; moneamus; monuissent.
2. Laudavissetis; regat; essent.
3. Multos equos in castris habet.
4. Oppidum oppugnemus.
5. Ne agros nostros vastent.
6. Venit ut Galliam vincat.
7. Venit ut Galliam vinceret.
8. Veniet ut Galliam vincat.
9. Venerat ut Galliam vinceret.
10. Venerit ut Galliam vincat.
11. Equites, qui hostes oppugnarent, misit.
12. Cum Germanis bellum geramus.
13. Pro patria fortiter pugnemus.
14. Allobrogibus imperavit, ut Helvetiis copiam frumenti darent.
15. Legatos ad Caesarem mittamus.
16. Cives pugnabant ne hostes oppidum expugnarent.
17. Cives pugnant ne hostes oppidum expugnent.
18. Cives pugnabunt ne hostes oppidum expugnent.
19. Cives pugnaverunt ne hostes oppidum expugnarent.
20. Cives pugnaverunt ne hostes oppidum expugnent.
21. Cives pugnaverant ne hostes oppidum expugnarent.

202.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He is coming that he may see Rome.
2. He was coming that he might see Rome.
3. He came that he might see Rome.
4. He has come that he may see Rome.
5. He will come that he may see Rome.
6. He had come to see Rome.
7. Let us hear the good consul.
8. Let us give money to the king.
9. Do the Helvetians obey their leader?
10. Let us send the legions into Gaul.
11. May the soldiers fight bravely for our native land.
12. We come that we may have peace.
13. They begged Caesar not to lay waste the fields.
14. He came that he might hear Cicero the orator.
15. Let us send troops to the Aedui.
16. He made the journey through Gaul that he might see Rome.
17. The Roman army will conquer the enemy, whose leader has been slain.
18. Let us not lay waste the fields of the Aedui.
19. Let us send letters to Cicero the consul.
20. The Suessiones led their forces into Gaul in order that they might attack Caesar.

LESSON XIX.

FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

Fourth Declension—U Nouns.

203.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in **-us** in the genitive singular. They are declined as follows:

	manus (f.), *hand.*		**cornu** (n.), *horn.*	
	SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS.	
Nom.	man-us	corn-u	-us	-u
Gen.	man-us	corn-us	-us	-us
Dat.	man-ui	corn-u	-ui	-u
Acc.	man-um	corn-u	-um	-u
Voc.	[redacted]	[redacted]	-us	-u
Abl.	man-u	corn-u	-u	-u
	PLURAL.		CASE-ENDINGS.	
Nom.	man-us	corn-ua	-us	-ua
Gen.	man-uum	corn-uum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	man-ibus	corn-ibus	-ibus, -ubus	-ibus, -ubus
Acc.	man-us	corn-ua	-us	-ua
Voc.	[redacted]	[redacted]	-us	-ua
Abl.	man-ibus	corn-ibus	-ibus, -ubus	-ibus, -ubus

204.

Domus, *house*, is peculiar in declension, having some endings of the Second Declension, as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	dom-us	dom-us
Gen.	dom-us	dom-uum, dom-orum
Dat.	dom-ui, dom-o	dom-ibus
Acc.	dom-um	dom-os, dom-us
Voc.	dom-us	dom-us
Abl.	dom-o, dom-u	dom-ibus

Fifth Declension—E Nouns.

205.

Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **-ei** in the genitive singular, and are declined as follows:

dies (m.), *day.* **res** (f.), *thing.*

	SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	di-es	r-es	-es
Gen.	di-ei	r-ei	-ei
Dat.	di-ei	r-ei	-ei
Acc.	di-em	r-em	-em
Voc.	di-es	r-es	-es
Abl.	di-e	r-e	-e

	PLURAL.		CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	di-es	r-es	-es
Gen.	di-erum	r-erum	-erum
Dat.	di-ebus	r-ebus	-ebus
Acc.	di-es	r-es	-es
Voc.	di-es	r-es	-es
Abl.	di-ebus	r-ebus	-ebus

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except **dies,** which is both masculine and feminine in the singular, and masculine in the plural.

Dies and **res** are the only Fifth Declension nouns that are declined in full. The others are declined in the singular only, although **acies** and **spes** have also the nom. and acc. plural.

206.

We have now seen that the five declensions are distinguished from one another *by the ending of the Genitive singular*, and that

In the	First	Declension	the Genitive sing. ends in	**-ae**
"	Second	"	" "	**-i**
"	Third	"	" "	**-is**
"	Fourth	"	" "	**-us**
"	Fifth	"	" "	**-ei**

207.

Ablative of Separation.

RULE 23.—Words showing separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

Verbs meaning *to liberate, remove, separate or divide, be absent, deprive* and *want*, are used with the ablative of separation.

Verbs beginning with **a, ab, de, ex, e,** are used with the ablative preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

1. Garumna Gallos *ab Aquitanis* dividit (Caesar, I. i.)
   The Garumna separates the Gauls *from the Aquitanians.*
2. *Suis finibus* eos prohibent (Caesar, I. i.)
   They keep them (eos) *from their territories.*
3. *De provincia* decesserunt.
   They withdrew *from the province.*
4. Cives *metu* liberavit.
   He freed the citizens *from fear.*
5. Milites *a castris* absunt.
   The soldiers are away *from the camp.*

208.

Vocabulary 18.

Fourth Declension Nouns.

adventus, -us (m.), *arrival, approach.*
conspectus, -us (m.), *sight, view.*
domus, -us (f.), *home, house;* loc. domi, *at home.*
equitatus, -us (m.), *cavalry.*
exercitus, -us (m.), *army.*
impetus, -us (m.), *an attack, charge.*
senatus, -us (m.), *senate.*
usus, -us (m.), *use, experience.*

Fifth Declension Nouns.

acies, -ei (f.), *line of battle.*
dies, -ei (m.), *day.*
fides, -ei (f.), *good faith, promise.*
res, rei (f.), *thing, affair.*
res militaris (f.), *warfare, the art of war, military system.*
respublica, reipublicae (f.)
(*noun* res *and adj.* publica), *republic.*
spes, -ei (f.), *hope.*

---

collis, -is (m.), *hill.*
deditio, -onis (f.), *surrender.*
legio, -onis (f.), *legion.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain, mount.*
veteranus, -a, -um, *veteran, old.*
ante, *before.*
exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum, *to await, wait for, expect.*
instruo, -ere, struxi, structum, *to draw up, form.*
subduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead up.*

209.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Castico persuasit ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet quod pater ante habuerat.
2. Germanis persuasit ut vicos Aeduorum incenderent.
3. Caesar copias suas in proximum collem subduxit.
4. Equitatum, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit.
5. In colle medio[1] aciem legionum veteranarum instruxit.
6. Helvetii legatos de deditione ad Caesarem miserunt.
7. Caesar aciem in conspectu hostium instruxit.
8. Caesar exercitum maximum in fines Germanorum duxit.
9. Nostri milites fortes usum maximum in re militari habent.
10. Tertio die castra movit et copias trans Rhenum duxit.
11. Adventum Caesaris, nostri ducis fortissimi, exspectemus.
12. Respublica Romana multas provincias maximas habet.
13. Venimus ut pacem habeamus.
14. Venimus ut pacem haberemus.
15. Senatus Romanus Aeduos amicos et fratres appellavit.
16. Prima luce[2] Labienum, qui montem occuparet, misit.
17. Caesar Labienum, qui montem occupet, mittit.
18. Dies brevissimi sunt, sed noctes longae.

---

1 In colle medio, *half way up the hill.*

2 Prima luce, *at dawn.*

210.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They have great hope of victory.
2. Our soldiers will fight more bravely than the enemy.
3. In the first watch they attacked the camp.
4. On the first day envoys came from the enemy to Caesar.
5. Caesar has captured the furthest town of the Sequani.
6. May our soldiers fight more bravely.
7. Where is your house? My house is in sight of the city.
8. Caesar led his army across the river.
9. He drew up a line of battle in sight of the Germans.
10. There are many very brave soldiers in Caesar's army.
11. Our brave soldiers have great experience in military affairs.
12. Let us lead our soldiers across the river and attack the camp of the enemy.
13. Caesar ordered Labienus to seize the mountain.
14. He sends the cavalry to attack the enemy.
15. The king has very little hope of victory.
16. They fought fiercely that they might be free.
17. The hope of our republic is in the valor of the soldiers.
18. Let us await the arrival of our army.

LESSON XX.

Numerals and Pronouns.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. NUMERALS.

REVIEW OF PERSONAL AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

211.

Irregular Adjectives.

The following adjectives end in the Genitive singular in **-ius**, and in the Dative singular in **-i**, but are otherwise declined like **bonus, -a, -um.**

NOTE.—**Alius** ends in **-ud** in neuter, instead of **-um.**

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*
nullus, nulla, nullum, *no one, no.*
solus, sola, solum, *alone.*
totus, tota, totum, *whole, all.*
ullus, ulla, ullum, *any.*
unus, una, unum, *one.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the one, the other (of two).*
uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither.*

212.

Examples of Declension.

alius, *another.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	al-ius	al-ia	al-iud
Gen.	al-ius	al-ius	al-ius
Dat.	al-ii	al-ii	al-ii
Acc.	al-ium	al-iam	al-iud
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	al-io	al-ia	al-io

PLURAL.

Nom.	al-ii	al-iae	al-ia
Gen.	al-iorum	al-iarum	al-iorum
Dat.	al-iis	al-iis	al-iis
Acc.	al-ios	al-ias	al-ia
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	al-iis	al-iis	al-iis

solus, *alone.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	sol-us	sol-a	sol-um
Gen.	sol-ius	sol-ius	sol-ius
Dat.	sol-i	sol-i	sol-i
Acc.	sol-um	sol-am	sol-um
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	sol-o	sol-a	sol-o

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	sol-i	sol-ae	sol-a
Gen.	sol-orum	sol-arum	sol-orum
Dat.	sol-is	sol-is	sol-is
Acc.	sol-os	sol-as	sol-a
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	sol-is	sol-is	sol-is

213.

There are three classes of numerals: *cardinals*, *ordinals* and *distributives*.

214.

A Cardinal Number is a word that indicates the number of objects: as **unus**, *one;* **duo**, *two.*

215.

An Ordinal Number indicates the place in a series: as **primus**, *first;* **secundus**, second.

216.

A Distributive Number answers the question, how many of each? or, how many at a time? as **singuli**, *one by one;* **bini**, *two by two.*

217.

Cardinals.

1	unus, -a, -um	22	viginti duo
2	duo, duae, duo	23	viginti tres
3	tres, tria	24	viginti quattuor
4	quattuor	25	viginti quinque
5	quinque	26	viginti sex
6	sex	27	viginti septem
7	septem	28	duodetriginta
8	octo	29	undetriginta
9	novem	30	triginta
10	decem	40	quadraginta
11	undecim	50	quinquaginta
12	duodecim	60	sexaginta
13	tredecim	70	septuaginta
14	quattuordecim	80	octoginta
15	quindecim	90	nonaginta
16	sedecim, *or* sexdecim	100	centum
17	septendecim	200	ducenti, -ae, -a
18	duodeviginti	300	trecenti
19	undeviginti	400	quadringenti
20	viginti	1,000	mille
21	viginti unus	2,000	duo milia

218.

Ordinals.

primus, *first.*	undecimus, *eleventh.*
secundus, *second.*	duodecimus, *twelfth.*
tertius, *third.*	tertius decimus, *thirteenth.*
quartus, *fourth.*	quartus decimus, *fourteenth.*
quintus, *fifth.*	quintus decimus, *fifteenth.*
sextus, *sixth.*	sextus decimus, *sixteenth.*
septimus, *seventh.*	septimus decimus, *seventeenth.*
octavus, *eighth.*	duodevicesimus, *eighteenth.*
nonus, *ninth.*	undevicesimus, *nineteenth.*
decimus, *tenth.*	vicesimus, *twentieth.*

Etc.

All the ordinals are declined like *bonus, -a, -um.*

219.

Declension of Cardinal Numbers.

Unus, duo and *tres* are declined. The other cardinals are indeclinable, except the hundreds (beginning with 200, *ducenti, -ae, -a*), which are declined like the plural of *bonus.*

Mille (1,000) is an indeclinable adjective in the singular—that is, when it indicates but *one thousand.* In the plural (as *duo milia*, 2,000) it is used as a neuter noun, with a genitive plural, *milia, milium.*

EXAMPLES.

Mille milites habet, *he has a thousand soldiers.*
Duo milia militum habet, *he has two thousand* (*s of*) soldiers.

unus, *one.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	un-us	un-a	un-um
Gen.	un-ius	un-ius	un-ius
Dat.	un-i	un-i	un-i
Acc.	un-um	un-am	un-um
Voc.	un-e	un-a	un-um
Abl.	un-o	un-a	un-o

duo, *two.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	du-o	du-ae	du-o
Gen.	du-orum	du-arum	du-orum
Dat.	du-obus	du-abus	du-obus
Acc.	du-os, du-o	du-as	du-o
Voc.	du-o	du-ae	du-o
Abl.	du-obus	du-abus	du-obus

tres, *three.*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	tr-es	tr-ia
Gen.	tr-ium	tr-ium
Dat.	tr-ibus	tr-ibus
Acc.	tr-es	tr-ia
Voc.	tr-es	tr-ia
Abl.	tr-ibus	tr-ibus

220.

Review of Personal Pronouns.

	First person, **ego.**	*Second person*, **tu.**
	SINGULAR.	
Nom.	ego, *I.*	tu, *you.*
Gen.	mei, *of me, myself.*	tui, *of you, yourself.*
Dat.	mihi, *to or for me, myself.*	tibi, *to, for you, yourself.*
Acc.	me, *me, myself.*	te, *you, yourself.*
Voc.	——	tu, *you.*
Abl.	me, *me, myself.*	te, *you, yourself.*
	PLURAL.	
Nom.	nos, *we.*	vos, *you.*
Gen.	nostrum, nostri, *of us, ourselves.*	vestrum, vestri, *of you, yourselves.*
Dat.	nobis, *to or for us; to, for ourselves.*	vobis, *to or for you; to, for yourselves.*
Acc.	nos, *us, ourselves.*	vos, *you, yourselves.*
Voc.	——	vos, *you.*
Abl.	nobis, *us, ourselves.*	vobis, *you, yourselves.*

221.

Sui, sibi, se, the *Reflexive pronoun of the third person,* refers to the *subject* of the clause in which it stands, and has the same form in both numbers.

	SINGULAR AND PLURAL.	
Gen.	sui, *of himself, herself, itself.*	*themselves.*
Dat.	sibi, *to or for himself, herself, itself.*	*themselves.*
Acc.	se, *himself, herself, itself.*	*themselves.*
Abl.	se, *himself, herself, itself.*	*themselves.*

There is no direct personal pronoun of the third person (he, she or it) in Latin, but the determinative *is, ea, id* is used in place of it.

222.

Observe that when the preposition *cum* (with) is used with the ablative of the personal pronoun, it becomes *enclitic;* thus:

Instead of	we use
cum me,	mecum, *with me.*
cum te,	tecum, *with you.*
cum vobis,	vobiscum, *with you.*
cum se,	secum, *with himself, with themselves,* etc.

223.

Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE 24.—Length or duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the *Accusative.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar *octo annos* bellum gessit.
   Caesar waged war *eight years.*
2. *Decem horas* pugnabant.
   They fought ten hours.
3. Fossa est lata *decem pedes.*
   The trench is *ten feet* wide.
4. Flumen *viginti pedes* altum est.
   The river is *twenty feet* deep.

224.

Vocabulary 19.

altitudo, -inis (f.), *height.*
annus, -i (m.), *year.*
familia, -ae (f.), *clan.*
flumen, -inis (n.), *river.*
Helvetius, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*
homo, -inis (m.), *man.*
iter, itineris (n.), *way, road.*
iudicium, -i (n.), *trial.*
lacus, -us (m.), *lake.*
Lemannus, -i (m.), *Leman (Geneva).*
locus, -i (m.), *place, region.*
numerus, -i (m.), *number.*
pars, partis (f.), *part, side;* una ex parte, *on one side.*
passus, -us (m), *pace;* millia passuum (1000 paces), *a mile.*
interea (adv.), *meantime.*
omnino (adv.), *altogether.*
undique (adv.), *on all sides, from all quarters.*
ad (with numerals), *about.*
cogo, -ere, -egi, -actum, *to collect.*
divido, -ere, -isi, -isum, *to divide, separate.*
educo, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead out.*
influo, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, *to flow into.*
perduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead through, carry along,*
regno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to reign.* [*construct.*

225.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Helvetiis facilius persuasit, quod (because) undique natura loci continentur.[1]
2. Una ex parte[2] flumine Rheno, latissimo atque latissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit;
3. altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;
4. tertia (ex parte) lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.
5. Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad[3] hominum milia decem, undique coegit.
6. Erant omnino itinera duo: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile; alterum per provinciam nostram.
7. Quinque legiones secum in Gallia habet.
8. Flumen est pedes quinquaginta latum.
9. Caesar decimam legionem in aciem eduxit.
10. Oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos incendunt.
11. Triginta quattuor obsides habet.
12. Tres legiones contra hostes mittamus.
13. Regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat.
14. Collis est centum quadraginta pedes altus.
15. Caesar tria milia militum in castris habet.
16. Inter ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem, murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit.

---

1 Continentur, *are hemmed in.*
2 Una ex parte, *on one side.*
3 Ad, *about.*

226.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The brother of the king will have many soldiers in the city.
2. He reigned in Gaul twenty years.
3. The brave soldiers will conquer the enemy in many battles.
4. On the fourth day they came into the territories of the Allobroges.
5. He drew up a line of battle of the four veteran legions.
6. He has sent a thousand soldiers to attack the enemy.
7. He has sent ten thousand soldiers to attack the enemy.
8. The lieutenant led five legions against the enemy.
9. He led the three legions, which he had enrolled in Gaul, across the Rhine.
10. Our soldiers are very brave; they have conquered yours.
11. Let us fight bravely for our native land.
12. The Romans fight more bravely than the Gauls.
13. The river is one hundred and eighty miles long.
14. The river is sixty feet wide and seventeen feet deep.
15. They burned twelve towns and four hundred villages.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns.

DEMONSTRATIVE, DETERMINATIVE, RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

227.

Demonstrative Pronouns—Hic, Iste, Ille.

hic, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	horum	harum	horum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	haec
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his	his

iste, *that of yours.*

Nom.	iste	ista	istud	isti	istae	ista
Gen.	istius	istius	istius	istorum	istarum	istorum
Dat.	isti	isti	isti	istis	istis	istis
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istos	istas	ista
Abl.	isto	ista	isto	istis	istis	istis

ille, *that* (*yonder*).

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Abl.	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

228.

Determinative Pronouns—Is, Idem, Ipse.

is, *that, this (he, she, it).*

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	is	ea	id	ei, ii	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eorum	earum	eorum
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
Abl.	eo	ea	eo	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis

idem, *same.*

Singular.

Nom.	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eodem	eadem	eodem

Plural.

Nom.	eidem iidem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
Dat.	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem
Acc.	eosdem	easdem	eadem
Abl.	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem

ipse, *self*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
Abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

229.
Relative Pronouns.

The Relative **qui** (*who*) is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

230.
Interrogative Pronouns.

The Interrogative Pronouns **quis** and **qui**, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

quis, *who, which, what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

231.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are quis and qui, with their compounds.

aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	*or* aliquod	*some, some one*
quidam	quaedam	quiddam	*or* quoddam	*certain, certain one*
quisque	quaeque	quidque	*or* quoque	*every, every one*
quivis	quaevis	quidvis	*or* quodvis	*any one you please*

aliquis, *some one, some, any one.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid *or* -quod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid *or* -quod
Abl.	aliquo	aliqua	aliquo

PLURAL.

Nom.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

232.

Vocabulary 20.

civitas, -atis (f.), *state.*
fides, ei (f.), *faith, protection.*
hiberna, -orum (n. pl.), *winter quarters.*
institutum, -i (n.), *custom.*
lex, legis (f.), *law.*
lingua, -ae (f.), *language.*
pons, -tis (m.), *bridge.*
potestas, -atis (f.), *power.*
vicus, -i (m.), *village.*
vigilia, -ae (f.), *watch.*
atque (conj.), *and, and also, and even.*
deduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead away.*
defendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *to defend.*
differunt, *they differ.*
incolo, -ere, colui, *to inhabit, dwell in.*
lego, -ere, legi, lectum, *to read.*
nuntio, -are, -ari, -atum, *to announce, report.*
permitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, *to grant, entrust, give up.*
pono, -ere, -posui, positum, *to place*;
castra ponere, *to pitch camp, to encamp.*

233.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Legatos ad eum miserunt.
2. In[1] his fuit Ariovistus.
3. Hoc proelium trans Rhenum nuntiaverunt.
4. In hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit.
5. Caesar ipse ad exercitum venit.
6. Se suaque in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permiserunt.
7. Apud eos fuit rex Divitiacus, totius Galliae potentissimus.
8. Hi magnam partem Galliae obtinuerant.
9. Oppida numero duodecim habent.
10. Caesar illos milites misit ut montem occuparent.
11. Nos potentes sumus sed hostes potentiores sunt.
12. Ad id bellum undecim milia hominum mittent.
13. Nos, qui amici populi Romani sumus, provinciam defendemus.
14. Caesar postero die[2] T. Labienum legatum, cum eis legionibus quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos[3] misit.
15. Eodem tempore Caesar exercitum in provinciam reduxit.
16. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.

---

1 *In* here means *among*.
2 Postero die, *on the next day*.
3 Morinos, *the Morini*.

234.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He burned that town which he had captured.
2. The legions which Caesar had formed in line of battle were very brave.
3. The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitani another.
4. On the same day he led the legions across the river.
5. Of all these the bravest are the Belgians.
6. These all differ from one another (inter se) in language, customs and laws.
7. He pitched camp three miles from their camp.
8. At the fourth watch he hastens to them by the same road.
9. They persuade them to burn their villages.
10. From that town a bridge extends to the Helvetians.
11. They are nearest to the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, with whom they continually wage war.
12. This book is mine; that is yours.
13. Those books are yours; these are ours.
14. Are these the same books that I gave you?
15. Did not Caesar write a book about the Gallic war?[1]
16. He wrote seven books; we have read four of them.[2]

---

1 About the Gallic war, *de bello Gallico*.
2 Latin idiom: of which we have read four.

LESSON XXII.

THE LATIN VERB.

Passive Voice.

235.

The Passive Voice of a Latin verb is derived in its simple tenses from the Active Voice.

236.

The Active Voice represents the subject as performing the action; *the Passive Voice* represents the subject as receiving the action.

237.

The Principal Parts.

The Principal Parts of the Passive Voice of a Latin verb are:

1. The Present Indicative (first per. sing.).
2. The Present Infinitive.
3. The Perfect Indicative (first per. sing.).

EXAMPLE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

VERB.	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
amo :	amor	amari	amatus sum

Formation of Simple Tenses.*

238.

PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE.

First Conjugation.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amo	amamus	amo-r	amamu-r
amas	amatis	ama-ris	ama-mini
amat	amant	amat-ur	amant-ur

Second Conjugation.

moneo	monemus	moneo-r	monemu-r
mones	monetis	mone-ris	mone-mini
monet	monent	monet-ur	monent-ur

239.

IMPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE.

First Conjugation.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amabam	amabamus	amaba-r	amabamu-r
amabas	amabatis	amaba-ris	amaba-mini
amabat	amabant	amabat-ur	amabant-ur

Second Conjugation.

monebam	monebamus	moneba-r	monebamu-r
monebas	monebatis	moneba-ris	moneba-mini
monebat	monebant	monebat-ur	monebant-ur

* Or Present System.

240.

FIRST PERSON.

(1) *First pers. sing.* (*active*) ends in **-o** or **-m**. It is changed from active to passive by adding **-r** when the active ends in **-o**; when the active ends in **-m**, by changing **-m** to **-r**.

(2) *First pers. plur.* (*active*) ends in **-s** (-mus); passive formed by changing final **-s** (-mus) to **-r** (-mur).

241.

SECOND PERSON.

(3) *Second pers. sing.* (*active*) ends in **-s**; passive formed by changing **-s** to **-ris**.

(4) *Second pers. plur.* (*active*) ends in **-tis**; passive formed by changing **-tis** to **-mini**.

242.

THIRD PERSON.

(5) *Third pers. sing. and plur.* (*active*) changed to passive by adding the syllable **-ur**.

NOTE.—The above rules apply to all Latin verbs, *pres.*, *imp.* and *fut. indicative*.

Write the Pres. and Imp. Ind., Active and Passive, of **rego** and **audio**, and compare with above forms of **amo** and **moneo**.

Form by the same rules the Fut. Ind., Active and Passive, of **amo**; of **moneo**; of **rego**; of **audio**.

Formation of Perfect Tenses.

243.

PERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE.

VERB Amo.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amavi	amavimus	amatus sum	amati sumus
amavisti	amavistis	amatus es	amati estis
amavit	amaverunt	amatus est	amati sunt

VERB Moneo.

monui	monuimus	monitus sum	moniti sumus
monuisti	monuistis	monitus es	moniti estis
monuit	monuerunt	monitus est	moniti sunt

(1) *The Perfect Indicative* (*active*) is derived from the *perfect stem* of the verb.

(2) *The Perfect Indicative* (*passive*) is formed by using the *Present Indicative* of **sum** with the *perfect participle* of the given verb.

(3) *The Perfect Participle* (*passive*) has the same form as the *Supine* (of the Active Voice), changing final **-m** to **-s**.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	SUPINE.	PERF. PART. (PASSIVE).
amo	amatum	amatus, -a, -um
moneo	monitum	monitus, -a, -um
rego	rectum	rectus, -a, -um
audio	auditum	auditus, -a, -um

244.

The Perfect Participle is declined like **bonus, -a, -um,** and is changed to agree with the subject in gender, number and case. The masculine is usually given in conjugation of a verb.

245.

PLUPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE.

VERB **Amo.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amav-eram	amav-eramus	amatus eram	amati eramus
amav-eras	amav-eratis	amatus eras	amati eratis
amav-erat	amav-erant	amatus erat	amati erant

VERB **Moneo.**

monu-eram	monu-eramus	monitus eram	moniti eramus
monu-eras	monu-eratis	monitus eras	moniti eratis
monu-erat	monu-erant	monitus erat	moniti erant

The Pluperfect Indicative (*active*) of any verb is formed by adding, to the *perfect stem*, the *imperfect indicative* of **sum.**

The Pluperfect Indicative (*passive*) is formed by using the *imperfect indicative* of **sum,** with the *perfect participle* of the given verb.

246.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE.

VERB **Amo.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amav-ero	amav-erimus	amatus ero	amati erimus
amav-eris	amav-eritis	amatus eris	amati eritis
amav-erit	amav-erint	amatus erit	amati erunt

VERB **Moneo.**

monu-ero	monu-erimus	monitus ero	moniti erimus
monu-eris	monu-eritis	monitus eris	monitus eritis
monu-erit	monu-erint	monitus erit	moniti erunt

The Future Perfect Indicative (*active*) of any verb is formed by adding, to the *perfect stem* of that verb, the *future indicative* of **sum.**

The Future Perfect Indicative (*passive*) is formed by using the *future indicative* of **sum** with the *perfect participle* (*passive*) of the given verb.

Subjunctive Mood.

247.

The Present Subjunctive (*passive*) is formed by making the same changes in the endings as in the simple tenses of the Indicative. (See Section 238.)

EXAMPLES.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amem	amemus	amer	amemur
ames	ametis	ameris	amemini
amet	ament	ametur	amentur

248.

The *Imperfect Subjunctive* (*passive*) is formed by making the same changes in endings as in case of simple tenses indicative.

EXAMPLES.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
amarem	amaremus	amarer	amaremur
amares	amaretis	amareris	amaremini
amaret	amarent	amaretur	amarentur

249.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (PASSIVE).

The *Perfect Subjunctive* (*passive*) is formed by adding, to the *perfect participle* (*passive*) of the given verb, the *present subjunctive* of the verb sum.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PERF. PART. PASS.	(1st per. sing.) PERF. SUBJ. PASS.
amo	amatus	amatus sim
moneo	monitus	monitus sim
rego	rectus	rectus sim
audio	auditus	auditus sim

250.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (PASSIVE).

The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* (*passive*) is formed by adding, to the *perfect participle* (*passive*) of the given verb, the *imperfect subjunctive* of **sum**.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PERF. PART. PASS.	(1st per. sing.) PLUP. SUBJ. PASS.
amo	amatus	amatus essem
moneo	monitus	monitus essem
rego	rectus	rectus essem
audio	auditus	auditus essem

251.

Formation of Imperative Passive.

VERB **Amo**.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	ama	amate	ama-re	ama-mini
Fut.	amato	amatote	amato-r	——
	amato	amanto	amato-r	amanto-r

(1) From the preceding it will be seen that the first form (second pers. sing., present) of the Imperative Passive is the same as the Present Infinitive Active.

Also that the active ending **-te** (second pers. plur., present) becomes **-mini** in passive; as: **ama-te**, changed to **ama-mini**.

(2) To form the *Future Imperative Passive*, we drop the second person plural of the Active Imperative (Future) and add -r to the three remaining forms of the active; as:

Fut.	amato-r	——
	amato-r	amanto-r

Formation of Passive Infinitives.

252.

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

The *Present Infinitive Passive* is formed by changing the final -e of the *Present Infinitive Active* to -i (in all conjugations except the Third, in which final -ere is changed to -i).

EXAMPLES.

CONJ.	VERB.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PRES. INF. PASS.
1	amo	amare	amari
2	moneo	monere	moneri
3	rego	regere	regi
4	audio	audire	audiri

253.

PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

The *Perfect Infinitive Passive* is formed by adding esse to the *Perfect Participle Passive*.

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PERF. PART. PASS.	PERF. INF. PASS.
amo	amatus	amatus esse
moneo	monitus	monitus esse
rego	rectus	rectus esse
audio	auditus	auditus esse

254.

FUTURE INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

The *Future Infinitive Passive* is formed by adding **-iri** to the neuter of the *Perfect Participle Passive* (same form as Supine).

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	NEUT., PERF. PART. PASS.	FUT. INF. PASS.
amo	amatum	amatum iri
moneo	monitum	monitum iri
rego	rectum	rectum iri
audio	auditum	auditum iri

For formation of Perfect Participle, see Section 343, (3).

255.

FORMATION OF GERUNDIVE.

The *Gerundive* is formed by dropping the final **-s** of the *Present Participle Active* and adding the endings **-dus, -da, -dum,** etc., the declension of the Gerundive being the same as that of **bonus.**

EXAMPLES.

VERB.	PRES. PART.	GERUNDIVE.
amo	aman-s	aman-dus
moneo	monen-s	monen-dus
rego	regen-s	regen-dus
audio	audien-s	audien-dus

256.

The *Conjugations* of the Latin verbs are distinguished from one another by the ending of the *Present Infinitive.*

Verbs having Present Infinitive in

	-are	are of the	*first conjugation.*
long	-ēre	"	*second* "
short	-ere	"	*third* "
	-ire	"	*fourth* "

257.

Observe that the endings of the Pres. Inf. in second and third conjugations are similar in form, the first e being *long* in the *second* and *short* in the *third.*

Verbs of these conjugations may be distinguished as follows:

	2D CONJ.	3D CONJ.
Pres. Ind.	-eo	-o { preceded by *a consonant,* or -i or -u.
Pres. Inf.	-ere	-ere

258.

Remember also that

(1) The *English Past Tense,* expressing continued action, custom or habit, is translated by the Latin *Imperfect;* as:

he was leading, *ducebat.*

(2) The *English Past Tense,* expressing definite past time, is translated by the Latin *Perfect* (called the *historical perfect*); as:

he led, *duxit.*

(3) The *English Perfect Tense* is translated by the Latin *Perfect* (called the *perfect definite*); as:

he has led, *duxit.*

LESSON XXIII.

First Conjugation, Passive Voice.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT; OF AGENT.

LOCATIVE CASES. TIME AND PLACE.

259.

Passive Voice of Amo.

Present stem, **ama.** *Perfect Participle*, **amatus.**

Principal parts—**am-or, am-ari, am-atus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amo-r, *I am loved.*	amamu-r, *we are loved.*
ama-ris, *you are loved.*	ama-mini, *you are loved.*
amat-ur, *he is loved.*	amant-ur, *they are loved.*

IMPERFECT.

amaba-r, *I was loved.*	amabamu-r, *we were loved.*
amaba-ris, *you were loved.*	amaba-mini, *you were loved.*
amabat-ur, *he was loved.*	amabant-ur, *they were loved.*

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amabo-r, *I shall be loved.*	amabimu-r, *we shall be loved.*
amabe-ris, *you will be loved.*	amabi-mini, *you will be loved.*
amabit-ur, *he will be loved.*	amabunt-ur, *they will be loved*

PERFECT.

amat-us[1] sum, *I have been loved.*	amat-i[1] sumus, *we have been loved.*
amat-us es, *you have been loved.*	amat-i estis, *you have been loved.*
amat-us est, *he has been loved.*	amat-i sunt, *they have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amat-us[1] eram, *I had been loved.*	amat-i[1] eramus, *we had been loved.*
amat-us eras, *you had been loved.*	amat-i eratis, *you had been loved.*
amat-us erat, *he had been loved.*	amat-i erant, *they had been loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amat-us[1] ero, *I shall have been loved.*	amat-i erimus, *we shall have been loved.*
amat-us eris, *you will have been loved.*	amat-i eritis, *you will have been loved.*
amat-us erit, *he will have been loved.*	amat-i erunt, *they will have been loved.*

1 See Note 1, page 173.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ame-r, *may I be loved.*	amemu-r, *may we be loved.*
ame-ris, *may you be loved.*	ame-mini, *may you be loved.*
amet-ur, *may he be loved.*	ament-ur. *may they be loved.*

IMPERFECT.

amare-r, *I should be loved.*	amarem-ur, *we should be loved.*
amare-ris, *you should be loved.*	amare-mini, *you should be loved.*
amaret-ur, *he should be loved.*	amarent-ur, *they should be loved.*

PERFECT.

amat-us[1] sim, *I may have been loved.*	amat-i[1] simus, *we may have been loved.*
amat-us sis, *you may have been loved.*	amat-i sitis, *you may have been loved.*
amat-us sit, *he may have been loved.*	amat-i sint, *they may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amat-us[1] essem, *I should have been loved.*	amat-i[1] essemus, *we should have been loved.*
amat-us esses, *you should have been loved.*	amat-i essetis, *you should have been loved.*
amat-us esset, *he should have been loved.*	amat-i essent, *they should have been loved.*

1 See Note 1, page 178.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. am-are, *be thou loved.*
Plur. ama-mini, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

Sing. amato-r, *thou shalt be loved.*
amato-r, *he shall be loved.*
Plur. amanto-r, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. am-ari, *to be loved.*
Perf. amat-us[1] esse, *to have been loved.*
Fut. amat-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. amat-us,[1] *having been loved.*
Gerundive am-andus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

NOTE 1.—Observe that the forms in **-us** (pl. **-i**) are masculine; these endings are changed to **-a** (pl. **-ae**), if the subject is feminine; and to **-um** (pl. **-a**) if the subject is neuter.

260.

Ablative of Means or Instrument.

RULE 25.—The *means* or *instrument* with which an action is performed is expressed by the *Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Castra *vallo fossaque* muniverunt.
They fortified the camp *with a wall and a ditch.*
2. Obsides *gladiis* interfecerunt.
They killed the hostages *with swords.*

261.

Ablative of Agent.

RULE 26.—The *agent* after a passive verb is expressed by the *Ablative* with **a** or **ab**.

EXAMPLES.

1. Galli *a Caesare* superati sunt.
   The Gauls were conquered *by Caesar*.

2. Caesar *a legatis* certior factus est.
   Caesar was informed *by the ambassadors*.

3. Oppidum *ab hostibus* expugnatum est.
   The town was taken *by the enemy*.

262.

Time and Place.

RULE 27.—*Time when* is expressed by the *Ablative;* as: hieme, *in winter;* aestate, *in summer*.

RULE 28.—*Time how long* is expressed by the *Accusative;* as: tres menses, *for three months;* viginti annos, *for* (*or during*) *twenty years*.

RULE 29.—*Place where* is expressed by the *Ablative*, with the preposition *in;* as: in Gallia, *in Gaul;* in castris, *in the camp;* in urbe, *in the city*.

RULE 30.—In names of towns, *place where* is expressed by the *Locative Case*, without a preposition.

263.

The *Locative Case* has:

(1) In the *First Declension*, the form of the *Dative;* as: Romae, *at Rome;* Capuae, *at (or in) Capua;* Athenis (pl.), *at Athens.*

(2) In the *Second Declension*, the form of the *Genitive;* as: Corinthi, *at Corinth;* Oceli, *at Ocelum.*

(3) In the *Third Declension*, the form of the *Ablative;* as: Carthagine, *at Carthage*; Vesontione, *at Vesontio.*

264.

Place to or from which in names of towns.

RULE 31.—*Place to which*, in names of towns, is expressed by the *Accusative*, without a preposition; as: Romam, *to Rome*; Athenas, *to Athens*; Carthaginem, *to Carthage*; Bibracte, *to Bibracte.*

RULE 32.—*Place from which*, in names of towns, is expressed by the *Ablative*, without a preposition; as: Roma, *from Rome*; Carthagine, *from Carthage*; Corintho, *from Corinth.*

265.

Vocabulary 19.

Aquileia, -ae (f.), *Aquileia.*
indicium, -i (n.), *information.*
obses, -idis (m.), *hostage.*
senatus, -us (m.), *senate.*
appello, -are, -avi, -atum, *to call.*
bello, -are, -avi, -atum, *to fight.*
commeo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to visit (with ad).*
confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to confirm, establish.*
contendo, -ere, -di, -tum, *to hasten, contend, try.*
cremo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to burn.*
do, dare, dedi, datum, *to give.*
enuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *to announce, report.*
hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to winter.*
impero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to command, order.*
laudo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to praise.*
occupo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to seize, occupy.*
praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitum, *to excel, surpass.*
supero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to conquer.*
vasto, -are, -avi, -atum, *to lay waste.*
ibi (*adv.*), *there.*
minime (*adv.*), *least.*
minime saepe, *very seldom.*
circum (*prep. with acc.*), *around.*

266.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Laudabam; laudabar; laudamini.
2. Superatus erat; superati sumus; commeant.
3. Appellaverunt; appellantur; confirmant.
4. Spectant; appellatus; bellandi.
5. Appellari; laudaturus esse; laudatus esse.
6. Mons a Labieno occupatur.
7. Agri a Germanis vastabantur.
8. Agri a Germanis vastati sunt.
9. Ea res per indicium[1] Helvetiis enuntiata[2] est.
10. Haec oppida ab hostibus expugnata[2] erant.
11. Mercatores ad eos minime saepe commeant.
12. Helvetii omnibus[3] virtute praestant.
13. A senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus est.
14. Militibus imperavit, ut castra hostium oppugnarent.
15. Agri nostri ab hostibus vastabuntur.
16. Ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus[4] contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit.

---

1 Per indicium, *through an informer.*
2 See Note 1, Section 259, page 173.
3 Omnibus (dat.), *all*, object of praestant.
4 Magnis itineribus, *by forced marches.*

267.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Let them praise; let them be praised.
2. We shall be praised; you (pl.) will be praised.
3. Many villages have been seized by the enemy.
4. Our entire supply of grain will be burned by the enemy.
5. Let the town be occupied by the soldiers.
6. The Gauls are surpassed in bravery by the Helvetians.
7. Many hostages have been given to the Germans by the Aedui.
8. In our language they are called Gauls.
9. Labienus awaited the arrival of the other legions, that he might seize the camp of the enemy.
10. Ariovistus himself led the troops across the river.
11. The fields of the Sequani were seized; their towns and villages were captured.
12. Hostages will not be given by the Aedui to the Germans.
13. Let peace be established with the neighboring states.
14. He hastens with three legions from the province to Geneva.
15. Many men from Athens and Carthage have come to Rome.
16. He lived at Capua many years.

LESSON XXIV.

Second Conjugation, Passive Voice.

DATIVE OF SERVICE.

268.

Passive Voice of Moneo.

Pres. stem, **mone.** *Perf. participle*, **monitus.**

Principal parts—**mon-eor, mon-eri, mon-itus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneo-r, *I am advised.*	monemu-r, *we are advised.*
mone-ris, *you are advised.*	mone-mini, *you are advised.*
monet-ur, *he is advised.*	monent-ur, *they are advised.*

IMPERFECT.

moneba-r, *I was advised.*	monebamu-r, *we were advised.*
moneba-ris, *you were advised.*	moneba-mini, *you were advised.*
monebat-ur, *he was advised.*	monebant-ur, *they were advised.*

FUTURE.

monebo-r, *I shall be advised.*	monebimu-r, *we shall be advised.*
monebe-ris, *you will be advised.*	monebi-mini, *you will be advised.*
monebit-ur, *he will be advised.*	monebunt-ur, *they will be advised.*

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monit-us sum, *I have been advised.*	monit-i sumus, *we have been advised.*
monit-us es, *you have been advised.*	monit-i estis, *you have been advised.*
monit-us est, *he has been advised.*	monit-i sunt, *they have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT.

monit-us eram, *I had been advised.*	monit-i eramus, *we had been advised.*
monit-us eras, *you had been advised.*	monit-i eratis, *you had been advised.*
monit-us erat, *he had been advised.*	monit-i erant, *they had been advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

monit-us ero, *I shall have been advised.*	monit-i erimus, *we shall have been advised.*
monit-us eris, *you will have been advised.*	monit-i eritis, *you will have been advised.*
monit-us erit, *he will have been advised.*	monit-i erunt, *they will have been advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monea-r, *may I be advised.*	moneamu-r, *let us be advised.*
monea-ris, *may you be advised.*	monea-mini, *may you be advised.*
moneat-ur, *let him be advised.*	moneant-ur, *let them be advised.*

IMPERFECT.

monere-r, *I should be advised.*	monerem-ur, *we should be advised.*
monere-ris, *you would be advised.*	monere-mini, *you would be advised.*
moneret-ur, *he would be advised.*	monerent-ur, *they would be advised.*

PERFECT.

monit-us sim, *I may have been advised.*	monit-i simus, *we may have been advised.*
monit-us sis, *you may have been advised.*	monit-i sitis, *you may have been advised.*
monit-us sit, *he may have been advised.*	monit-i sint, *they may have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT.

monit-us essem, *I should have been advised.*	monit-i essemus, *we should have been advised.*
monit-us esses, *you would have been advised.*	monit-i essetis, *you would have been advised.*
monit-us esset, *he would have been advised.*	monit-i essent, *they would have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. mon-ere, *be thou advised.*

Plur. mone-mini, *be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

Sing. moneto-r, *thou shalt be advised.*

moneto-r, *he shall be advised.*

Plur. monento-r, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mon-eri, *to be advised.*

Perf. monit-us esse, *to have been advised.*

Fut. monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. monit-us, *having been advised.*

Gerundive mon-endus, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

269.

We have already learned several uses of the *Dative Case*, as:

The Dative of the indirect object.

The Dative of possession.

The Dative with verbs of persuading, commanding, etc.

We shall now take up another use of the Dative, a use which shows *that for which something serves.*

270.

The Dative of Service.

RULE 33.—The Dative is used to express the object for which something serves.

It is often expressed with a *dative of the personal object for whom or to whom.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Tertiam aciem nostris *subsidio* misit.
   He sent the third line *as a relief* to our men.

2. Milites oppido *praesidio* sunt.
   The soldiers are *a protection* (lit. *for a protection*) to the town.

3. Hoc Caesari est *curae.*
   This thing is *a care* (lit. *for a care*) to Caesar.

Observe that the *double dative* is used in each of the preceding examples.

271.

Vocabulary 22.

auctoritas, -atis (f.), *influence.*

auxilium, -i (n.), *aid, help,* (pl.) *auxiliaries.*

expeditus, -a, -um, *in light marching order.*

finitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring*; (m. pl.) finitimi, *neighbors.*

praesidium, -i (n.), *protection, assistance, a guard.*

proelium, -i (n.), *battle.*

regnum, -i (n.), *chief power, royal power, kingdom.*

inde (adv.), *thence.*

obtineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *to get, hold.*

sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *to sustain, withstand.*

claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum, *to close.*

colloco, -are, -avi, -atum, *to place, to station.*

obsideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, *to besiege.*

pareo, -ere, parui, ——, *to obey.*

permoveo, -ere, -movi, motum, *to influence.*

persuadeo, -ere, -suasi, -suasum, *to persuade, induce.*

prohibeo, -ere, -hibui, -hibitum, *to prevent, keep off, keep away from or out of, forbid.*

teneo, -ere, -ui, *to hold.*

272.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Haec mihi curae erunt.
2. Mons a Labieno tenetur.
3. Mons a Labieno tentus est.
4. Mons a Labieno teneatur.
5. Collis ab hostibus tenebatur.
6. Undique loci natura Helvetii continentur.
7. Hostes nostris finibus prohibebuntur.
8. Helvetii his rebus et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti sunt.
9. Sex legiones expeditas ducebat.
10. Post eas[1] impedimenta totius exercitus collocarat.
11. Duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant[2] praesidioque impedimentis erant.
12. Labienus nostros exspectabat, proelioque abstinebat.
13. Finitimis persuadent ut oppida sua vicosque incendant.
14. Helvetii ab eo persuadentur ut legatos ad Caesarem mittant.
15. Helvetii ab eo persuasi sunt ut legatos ad Caesarem mitterent.

---

1 Post eas, *in the rear of these (legions)*.

2 Totum agmen claudebant, *formed the rear guard*.

273.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Let us enlist 10,000 men for a guard to the camp.
2. Caesar had many hostages with him.
3. The chief power in the state had been held for many years by Casticus.
4. The entire town is held by the enemy.
5. The brave soldiers will conquer the enemy in many battles.
6. On that day the soldiers came to Rome.
7. The towns are held by the enemy.
8. The towns will be held by the enemy.
9. The towns had been held by the enemy.
10. He sent the soldiers as an aid to the citizens.
11. Do the Helvetians obey their leaders[1]?
12. The Helvetians will be influenced by these things.
13. May the enemy be kept away from our territories.
14. The town of Ocelum is besieged by the enemy.
15. He sent four legions across the river, that the farther bank might be held by them.
16. May the attack of the enemy be bravely sustained by the soldiers.

1 Leaders, dative case, obj. of *obey*.

LESSON XXV.

Third Conjugation, Passive Voice.

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

274.

Passive Voice of Rego.

Pres. stem, **rege.** *Perf. participle*, **rectus.**

Principal parts—**reg-or, reg-i, rec-tus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rego-r, *I am ruled.*	regimu-r, *we are ruled.*
rege-ris, *you are ruled.*	regi-mini, *you are ruled.*
regit-ur, *he is ruled.*	regunt-ur, *they are ruled.*

IMPERFECT.

regeba-r, *I was ruled.*	regebamu-r, *we were ruled.*
regeba-ris, *you were ruled.*	regeba-mini, *you were ruled.*
regebat-ur, *he was ruled.*	regebant-ur, *they were ruled.*

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rega-r, *I shall be ruled.*	regemu-r, *we shall be ruled.*
rege-ris, *you will be ruled.*	rege-mini, *you will be ruled.*
reget-ur, *he will be ruled.*	regent-ur, *they will be ruled.*

PERFECT.

rect-us sum, *I have been ruled.*	rect-i sumus, *we have been ruled.*
rect-us es, *you have been ruled.*	rect-i estis, *you have been ruled.*
rect-us est, *he has been ruled.*	rect-i sunt, *they have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT.

rect-us eram, *I had been ruled.*	rect-i eramus, *we had been ruled.*
rect-us eras, *you had been ruled.*	rect-i eratis, *you had been ruled.*
rect-us erat, *he had been ruled.*	rect-i erant, *they had been ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

rect-us ero, *I shall have been ruled.*	rect-i erimus, *we shall have been ruled.*
rect-us eris, *you will have been ruled.*	rect-i eritis, *you will have been ruled.*
rect-us erit, *he will have been ruled.*	rect-i erunt, *they will have been ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rega-r, *may I be ruled.*	**regamu-r,** *let us be ruled.*
rega-ris, *may you be ruled.*	**rega-mini,** *may you be ruled.*
regat-ur, *let him be ruled.*	**regant-ur,** *let them be ruled.*

IMPERFECT.

regere-r, *I should be ruled.*	**regeremu-r,** *we should be ruled.*
regere-ris, *you should be ruled.*	**regere-mini,** *you should be ruled.*
regeret-ur, *he should be ruled.*	**regerent-ur,** *they should be ruled.*

PERFECT.

rect-us sim, *I may have been ruled.*	**rect-i simus,** *we may have been ruled.*
rect-us sis, *you may have been ruled.*	**rect-i sitis,** *you may have been ruled.*
rect-us sit, *he may have been ruled.*	**rect-i sint,** *they may have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rect-us essem, *I should have been ruled.*	rect-i essemus, *we should have been ruled.*
rect-us esses, *you would have been ruled.*	rect-i essetis, *we would have been ruled.*
rect-us esset, *he would have been ruled.*	rect-i essent, *they would have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. reg-ere, *be thou ruled.*
Plur. regi-mini, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

Sing. regito-r, *thou shalt be ruled.*
regito-r, *he shall be ruled.*
Plur. regunto-r, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. reg-i, *to be ruled.*
Perf. rect-us esse, *to have been ruled.*
Fut. rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. rect-us, *having been ruled.*
Gerundive reg-endus, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

275.

Genitive of Possession.

RULE 34.—The Genitive is used to denote possession or ownership.

EXAMPLES.

1. Libri *Caesaris.*
   The books *of Caesar.*

2. Senatus *populi Romani.*
   The senate of the Roman people.

276.

Partitive Genitive.

RULE 35.—The name of the *whole*, of which *a part* is mentioned, is put in the Genitive Case.

EXAMPLES.

1. Una pars *eorum.*
   One part *of them.*

2. *Helvetiorum* nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.
   Of the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.

277.

Subjunctive of Result.

RULE 36.—The Subjunctive, with *ut* (negative *ut non*), is used to express the result of an action.

EXAMPLES.

1. Accidit *ut esset luna plena.*
   It happened *that there was a full moon.*

2. His rebus flebat *ut minus facile bellum inferre possent.*
   From these facts it resulted *that they were able less easily to wage war.*

3. Multis vulneribus confectus *ut se sustinere non posset.*
   Used up with many wounds *so that he could not stand.*

278.

After words expressing *doubt*, etc., the clause of result is introduced by *quin* (that).

EXAMPLES.

1. Non dubito *quin haec vera sint.*
   I do not doubt *that these things are true.*

2. Non est dubium *quin hostes agros vastent.*
   There is no doubt *that the enemy are laying waste the fields.*

279.

A clause expressing result is called a *consecutive clause.*

280.

Vocabulary 23.

amicitia, -ae (f.), *friendship.*
angustiae, -arum (pl.), *a pass.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow, confined.*
auctoritas, -atis (f.), *influence, authority.*
deditio, -onis (f.), *surrender.*
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful;* non est dubium, *there is no doubt.*
exercitus, -us (m.), *army.*
inopia, -ae (f.), *want, need, scarcity.*
mens, mentis (f.), *mind.*
sementis, -is (f.), *a sowing;* sementes facere, *to sow grain.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*
tempus, -oris (n.), *time;* eo tempore, *at that time.*
timor, -oris (m.), *fear, alarm.*
iam (adv.), *already.*
accido, -ere, accidi, ——, *to happen.*
adduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead to, induce.*
dubito, -are, -avi, -atum, *to doubt, have doubt.*
facio, -ere, feci, factum, *to make, do.*
pertineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *to pertain to, extend.*
perturbo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to disturb, throw into confusion, alarm.*
pervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to arrive at, reach, come.*
suppeto, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *to be on hand, be supplied.*
traduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead across.*

281.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Attingit; attingunt; comburunt.
2. Ducti sunt; ducuntur; deligentur.
3. Dixit; dicit; dictum est; dicitur.
4. Coemunt; coemere; contenderant.
5. Inducti; inducti sunt; inducti eramus.
6. Dixisse; dicturus esse; dictus esse; dictum iri.
7. Ducens; ducturus; ductus; ducendus.
8. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti,[1] legatos de deditione ad Caesarem miserunt.
9. Legati de deditione ad Caesarem mittantur.
10. Legatos de deditione ad Caesarem mittamus.
11. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant.
12. Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnium mentes perturbaret.
13. (a) His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, (b) constituerunt[2] ea[3] quae ad proficiscendum [*to their journey*) pertinerent comparare, (c) iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere, (d) ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, (e) cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

---

1 Adducti, *induced*.
2 Constituerunt . . . . comparare, *they determined to prepare*.
3 Ea. *those things*.

282.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They wage war; war will be waged.
2. Let all these things[1] be done.
3. At that time the legions were (being) led into Gaul.
4. Let ambassadors be sent to Caesar.
5. Let us send ambassadors to Caesar.
6. He collected a large army from all Gaul.
7. I do not doubt that[2] our soldiers have conquered the enemy.
8. There is no doubt that[2] these things are true.
9. The boy whom you see is my brother.
10. We come that we may have peace.
11. An army was led into Gaul by the Suessiones that they might attack Caesar.
12. An army will be sent into Gaul by Caesar.
13. It happened that a legion had come[3] into the province.
14. Caesar waged war on the Helvetians, who were called in their own language Celts, in ours Gauls.
15. They were braver than the rest of the Gauls.
16. The Germans were farther from the province than the Helvetians, but the latter[4] had the narrower bounds[5].
17. This thing has been revealed to the enemy.
18. He persuaded the state to send (that they should send) Caesar with all the forces.

---

1 All these things, *haec omnia*.
2 See Section 278, page 192.
3 Subjunctive of result.
4 Latter, *hi*.
5 Bounds, *fines*.

LESSON XXVI.

Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice.

CAUSAL AND TEMPORAL CAUSES. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

283.

Passive Voice of Audio.

Present stem, **audi.** *Perfect Participle*, **auditus.**

Principal parts—**aud-ior, aud-iri, aud-itus sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audio-r, *I am heard.*	audimu-r, *we are heard.*
audi-ris, *you are heard.*	audi-mini, *you are heard.*
audit-ur, *he is heard.*	audiunt-ur, *they are heard.*

IMPERFECT.

audieba-r, *I was heard.*	audiebamu-r, *we were heard.*
audieba-ris, *you were heard.*	audieba-mini, *you were heard.*
audiebat-ur, *he was heard.*	audiebant-ur, *they were heard.*

FUTURE.

audia-r, *I shall be heard.*	audiemu-r, *we shall be heard.*
audie-ris, *you will be heard.*	audie-mini, *you will be heard.*
audiet-ur, *he will be heard.*	audient-ur, *they will be heard.*

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audit-us sum, *I have been heard.*	audit-i sumus, *we have been heard.*
audit-us es, *you have been heard.*	audit-i estis, *you have been heard.*
audit-us est, *he has been heard.*	audit-i sunt, *they have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT.

audit-us eram, *I had been heard.*	audit-i eramus, *we had been heard.*
audit-us eras, *you had been heard.*	audit-i eratis, *you had been heard.*
audit-us erat, *he had been heard.*	audit-i erant, *they had been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

audit-us ero, *I shall have been heard.*	audit-i erimus, *we shall have been heard.*
audit-us eris, *you will have been heard.*	audit-i eritis, *you will have been heard.*
audit-us erit, *he will have been heard.*	audit-i erunt, *they will have been heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audia-r, *may I be heard.*	audiamu-r, *let us be heard.*
audia-ris, *may you be heard.*	audia-mini, *may you be heard.*
audiat-ur, *let him be heard.*	audiant-ur, *let them be heard.*

IMPERFECT.

audire-r, *I should be heard.*	audiremu-r, *we should be heard.*
audire-ris, *you should be heard.*	audire-mini, *you should be heard.*
audiret-ur, *he should be heard.*	audirent-ur, *they should be heard.*

PERFECT.

audit-us sim, *I may have been heard.*	audit-i simus, *we may have been heard.*
audit-us sis, *you may have been heard.*	audit-i sitis, *you may have been heard.*
audit-us sit, *he may have been heard.*	audit-i sint, *they may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audit-us essem, *I should have been heard.*	audit-i essemus, *we should have been heard.*
audit-us esses, *you should have been heard.*	audit-i essetis, *you should have been heard.*
audit-us esset, *he should have been heard.*	audit-i essent, *they should have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing. aud-ire, *be thou heard.*
Plur. aud-imini, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

Sing. audito-r, *thou shalt be heard.*
audito-r, *he shall be heard.*
Plur. audiunto-r, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. aud-iri, *to be heard.*
Perf. audit-us esse, *to have been heard.*
Fut. audit-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. audit-us, *having been heard.*
Gerundive aud-iendus, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

284.

Causal Clauses.

A Causal Clause expressss *the cause of* or *reason for* an action.

EXAMPLES.

1. Hoc dico, *quod id credo.*
   I say this, *because I believe it.*

2. Helvetii virtute praecedunt *quod saepe cum Germanis contendunt.*
   The Helvetians excel in bravery *because they often fight with the Germans.*

RULE 37.—*Cum* (or *quum*) causal or concessive (that is, with the meaning *since* (causal) or *although* (concessive)] takes the Subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Cum* haec ita sint.
   Since these things are so.

2. His *cum* sua sponte persuadere non possent.
   Since by their own influence they could not persuade them.

3. Copias per fines duxit *cum iter difficile esset.*
   He led the troops through the territories *although the march was difficult.*

258.

Temporal Clauses.

A Temporal Clause expresses *the time of an action.*

RULE 38.—*Cum* (or *quum*) temporal (meaning *when*) takes the Subjunctive when it expresses imperfect or pluperfect time, and takes the Indicative in other tenses.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia.
   When Caesar was in hither Gaul.

2. Cum id nuntiatum esset.
   When this had been reported.

286.

Ablative of Specification.

RULE 39.—The Ablative of Specification shows that in respect to which something is done.

It answers the questions "In what respect," "In what particular," etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. Hi omnes *lingua, institutis, legibus* inter se differunt.
   These all differ from one another *in language, customs* (and) *laws.*

2. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos *virtute* praecedunt.
   For which reason the Helvetians also excel the rest of the Gauls *in bravery.*

287.

Vocabulary 24.

cultus, -us (m.), *cultivation, civilization.*
Divitiacus, -i (m.), *Divitiacus.*
explorator, -oris (m.), *scout, spy.*
hora, -ae (f.), *hour.*
humanitas, -atis (f.), *refinement.*
mensis, -is (m.), *month.*
oratio, -onis (f.), *oration, speech.*
nemo (neminis) (m.), *no one.*
severus, -a, -um, *severe, stern.*
cum, *since, although, when.*
cur, *why.*
eo, *there, in that place.*
ita, *thus.*
propterea quod, *because.*
quin, *that.*
quod, *because.*
tam, *so.*
tamen, *yet, nevertheless.*

cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum, *to make way, yield, pass.*
convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to come together.*
credo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *to believe, trust.*
educo, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead out.*
fugio, -ere, fugi, fugitum, *to fly from, retreat.*
fugo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to put to flight, rout.*
habito, -are, -avi, -atum, *to dwell, live in.*
peto, -eri, petivi, petitum, *to ask for, seek, request.*
pono, -ere, posui, positum, *to place.*
quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum, *to ask, inquire.*
timeo, -ere, timui, ——, *to fear, be afraid.*

288.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Veniam; venimus; veneramus; venerint.
2. Audiar; audimur; auditi eramus; audiatur.
3. Audivisse; auditurus esse; auditus esse.
4. Cum Caesar Helvetios vicisset, legiones in hiberna duxit.
5. Eo[1] cum venisset, Helvetii ad eum legatos miserunt.
6. Legati primi civitatis ad Caesarem mittantur.
7. Ad eos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, ita[2] responderunt.
8. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, litteras multas ad Labienum misit.
9. Non est dubium quin nostri milites fortes sint.
10. Quis dubitat quin Caesar hostes vicerit?
11. Nemo dubitat quin nostri cives pro patria fortissime pugnaverint.
12. Cum hostes fortiter pugnaverint tamen victi sunt.
13. Hostes fortiter pugnaverunt, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis esset.
14. Caesar copias suas in proximum collem duxit equitatumque qui impetum hostium sustineret, misit.

---

1 Eo, *there.* 2 Ita, *thus.*

289.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He is so stern that they fear him.
2. The Romans had been eight years in Gaul.
3. Caesar was leading the army out of the territory because the enemy had fled.
4. Why did Caesar come into the territories of the Aedui?
5. Shall we send aid to the Helvetians?
6. They defended the town bravely for forty days.
7. Hear this speech of Divitiacus and inquire the cause of it.
8. He lived at Capua seven years.
9. On that day the soldiers came to Rome.
10. Of all these the bravest are the Helvetians, because they are farthest away[1] from the civilization and refinement of the province.
11. It is easy, since you excel the Gauls in bravery, to seize the chief power[2] in the state.
12. Although they fight bravely, yet they will be conquered by our soldiers.
13. He sent spies to find out the plans of the enemy.
14. In the meantime,[3] with that legion which he had with him, and with the soldiers, who had come together from the province, he attacked the enemy.

---

1 They are farthest away, *longissime absunt.*
2 Chief power, *imperium.*
3 In the meantime, *interea.*

LESSON XXVII.

THE VERB CAPIO.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

290.

Capio is a verb of the *Third Conjugation*, but forms its simple tenses like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

291.

Capio, *to take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

Active: **capio, capere, cepi, captum.**

Passive: **capior, capi, captus sum.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
capio, *I take.*	capior, *I am taken.*
capis, *you take.*	caperis, *you are taken.*
capit, *he takes.*	capitur, *he is taken.*
PLURAL.	
capimus, *we take.*	capimur, *we are taken.*
capitis, *you take.*	capimini, *you are taken.*
capiunt, *they take.*	capiuntur, *they are taken.*

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
capiebam, *I was taking.*	capiebar, *I was (being) taken.*
capiebas, *you were taking.*	capiebaris, *you were taken.*
capiebat, *he was taking.*	capiebatur, *he was taken.*
PLURAL.	
capiebamus, *we were taking.*	capiebamur, *we were taken.*
capiebatis, *you were taking.*	capiebamini, *you were taken.*
capiebant, *they were taking.*	capiebantur, *they were taken.*

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	
capiam, *I shall take.*	capiar, *I shall be taken.*
capies, *you will take.*	capieris, *you will be taken.*
capiet, *he will take.*	capietur, *he will be taken.*
PLURAL.	
capiemus, *we shall take.*	capiemur, *we shall be taken.*
capietis, *you will take.*	capiemini, *you will be taken.*
capient, *they will take.*	capientur, *they will be taken.*

PERFECT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
cepi, *I have taken, or I took.*	captus sum, *I have been taken, or I was taken.*
cepisti, *you have taken, or you took.*	captus es, *you have been taken, or you were taken.*
cepit, *he has taken, or he took.*	captus est, *he has been taken, or he was taken.*
PLURAL.	
cepimus, *we have taken, or we took.*	capti sumus, *we have been taken, or we were taken.*
cepistis, *you have taken, or you took.*	capti estis, *you have been taken, or you were taken.*
ceperunt, *they have taken, or they took.*	capti sunt, *they have been taken, or they were taken.*

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	
ceperam, *I had taken.*	captus eram, *I had been taken.*
ceperas, *you had taken.*	captus eras, *you had been taken.*
ceperat, *he had taken.*	captus erat, *he had been taken.*
PLURAL.	
ceperamus, *we had taken.*	capti eramus, *we had been taken.*
ceperatis, *you had taken.*	capti eratis, *you had been taken.*
ceperant, *they had taken.*	capti erant, *they had been taken.*

Future Perfect.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
cepero, *I shall have taken.*	captus ero, *I shall have been taken.*
ceperis, *you will have taken.*	captus eris, *you will have been taken.*
ceperit, *he will have taken.*	captus erit, *he will have been taken.*
PLURAL.	
ceperimus, *we shall have taken*	capti erimus, *we shall have been taken.*
ceperitis, *you will have taken.*	capti eritis, *you will have been taken.*
ceperint, *they will have taken.*	capti erunt, *they will have been taken.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	
capiam, *I may take.*	capiar, *I may be taken.*
capias, *you may take.*	capiaris, *you may be taken.*
capiat, *he may take.*	capiatur, *he may be taken.*
PLURAL.	
capiamus, *we may take.*	capiamur, *we may be taken.*
capiatis, *you may take.*	capiamini, *you may be taken.*
capiant, *they may take.*	capiantur, *they may be taken.*

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
caperem, *I might take.*	caperer, *I might be taken.*
caperes, *you might take.*	capereris, *you might be taken.*
caperet, *he might take.*	caperetur, *he might be taken.*
PLURAL.	
caperemus, *we might take.*	caperemur, *we might be taken.*
caperetis, *you might take.*	caperemini, *you might be taken.*
caperent, *they might take.*	caperentur, *they might be taken.*

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	
ceperim, *I may have taken.*	captus sim, *I may have been taken.*
ceperis, *you may have taken.*	captus sis, *you may have been taken.*
ceperit, *he may have taken.*	captus sit, *he may have been taken.*
PLURAL.	
ceperimus, *we may have taken.*	capti simus, *we may have been taken.*
ceperitis, *you may have taken.*	capti sitis, *you may have been taken.*
ceperint, *they may have taken.*	capti sint, *they may have been taken.*

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
SINGULAR.	
cepissem, *I might have taken.*	captus essem, *I might have been taken.*
cepisses, *you might have taken.*	captus esses, *you might have been taken.*
cepisset, *he might have taken.*	captus esset, *he might have been taken.*
PLURAL.	
cepissemus, *we might have taken.*	capti essemus, *we might have been taken.*
cepissetis, *you might have taken.*	capti essetis, *you might have been taken.*
cepissent, *they might have taken.*	capti essent, *they might have been taken.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing.	cape, *take (thou).*	capere, *be thou taken.*
Plur.	capite, *take (you).*	capimini, *be you taken.*

FUTURE.

Sing.	capito, *thou shalt take.*	capitor, *thou shalt be taken.*
	capito, *he shall take.*	capitor, *he shall be taken.*
Plur.	capitote, *you shall take.*	——
	capiunto, *they shall take.*	capiuntor, *they shall be taken.*

INFINITIVES.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE.
Pres.	capere, *to take.*	capi, *to be taken.*
Perf.	cepisse, *to have taken.*	captus esse, *to have been taken.*
Fut.	capturus esse, *to be about to take.*	captum iri, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE.

Pres.	capiens, *taking.*
Fut.	capturus, *about to take.*

PASSIVE.

Perf.	captus, *having been taken.*
Gerundive	capiendus, *worthy to be taken.*

GERUND.

ACTIVE.

Gen.	capiendi, *of taking.*
Dat.	capiendo, *to or for taking.*
Acc.	capiendum, *taking.*
Abl.	capiendo, *by, from, with, taking.*

292.

Conditional Sentences.

A clause expressing a condition is called a *conditional clause.* It is usually introduced by **si,** *if*, or the negative form, **nisi,** *if not.*

A *conditional sentence* is one containing a conditional clause.

A complete conditional sentence has *two clauses:* the *dependent clause*, which expresses the *condition* and is called the *protasis;* the *independent clause*, which expresses the *conclusion*, and is called the *apodosis.*

EXAMPLE.

Si hoc dicit, errat.
(protasis) (apodosis)
If he says this, he is wrong.

293.

Forms of Conditional Sentences.

Conditional sentences are divided into three classes: (1) *simple conditions*, (2) *future conditions*, and (3) *conditions contrary to fact.*

1. SIMPLE CONDITIONS.—These express *present* or *past time*, and state or imply nothing as to the fulfilment of the condition.

The *present tense* or some *past tense* of the *Indicative* is used in both clauses.

EXAMPLES.

1. Si hoc dicit, errat.
   If he says this, he is wrong.

2. Si hoc dixit, erravit.
   If he said this, he was wrong.

2. FUTURE CONDITIONS.—These express conditions that involve future time and imply nothing as to whether or not the condition will be fulfilled.

There are two kinds of future conditions:

(1) *More vivid*, in which the *Future Indicative* is used in both clauses, as:

Si veniet, hostes superabit.
If he comes (lit. *will come*), *he will conquer the enemy.*

(2) *Less vivid*, taking the *Present Subjunctive* in both clauses, as:

Si veniat, hostes superet.
If he should come, he would conquer the enemy.

NOTE.—In translating from English into Latin, it is important to remember (1) that *will* or *shall*, in the English sentence, is the sign that the corresponding Latin sentence must be of the "More Vivid Future" form; that is, it must contain the *Future Indicative* in both clauses; (2) that *would* or *should*, in the English sentence (with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition), indicates that its Latin translation must have the "Less Vivid Future" form, with the *Present Subjunctive* in both clauses.

3. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.—These imply that the conditions are not fulfilled. They take some *past tense* of the *Subjunctive* in both clauses.

EX. 1. Si veniret, hostes superaret.
If he would come, he would conquer the enemy.

NOTE.—This implies the non-fulfilment of the condition; that is, he would conquer the enemy if he *would* come, but he will *not* come.

EX. 2. Si venisset, hostes superavisset.

If he had come, he would have conquered the enemy.

NOTE.—This form of condition implies, still more clearly, that the condition was not fulfilled.

Observe that:

(1) The *Indicative* is used in the simple and vivid future conditions; and

(2) The *Subjunctive* is used in less vivid future conditions and in conditions contrary to fact.

294.

Vocabulary 25.

alius, -a, -ud, *other.*
animus, -i (m.), *soul, spirit.*
condicio, -onis (f.), *condition.*
crudelis, -e, *cruel.*
idem, eiusdem (n.), *the same (thing).*
locus, -i (m.), *place.*
maleficium, -i (n.), *evil doing, injury.*
nisi, *if not, unless.*
nullus, -a, -um, *none.*
Persae, -arum, *the Persians.*
socius, -i (m.), *ally.*
ullus, -a, -um, *any.*
extra (*prep. w. acc.*), *out of.*

accipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, *to receive, accept.*
capio, -ere, cepi, captum, *to take, capture.*
facio, -ere, feci, factum, *to make, do.*
perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *to complete, accomplish.*
recipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, *to receive, take back*;
se recipere, *to withdraw, retreat.*
regno, -are, -avi, -atum, *to reign.*
suscipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, *to take up.*
sibi suscipere, *to undertake, take upon one's self.*

295.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Si id facit, bene est.
2. Si id faciebat, bene erat.
3. Si id fecit, bene fuit.
4. Si id faciet, bene erit.
5. Si id faciat, bene sit.
6. Si id faceret, bene esset.
7. Si id fecisset, bene fuisset.
8. Si Caesar suas copias trans flumen duxisset, hostes vicisset.
9. Si hostes in nostros agros venient, vicos incendent.
10. Si hostes in nostros agros veniant, vicos incendant.
11. Is sibi[1] legationem ad civitates suscepit[1].
12. Non dubium est quin Helvetii fortissimi Gallorum sint.
13. Per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit.
14. Nobis est in animo[2] sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter nullum habemus.
15. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.
16. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum (collected) habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.

---

1 sibi . . . suscepit, *he took upon himself, he undertook.*
2 Nobis est in animo, *we have it in mind, i.e., we intend.*

296.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. If Caesar comes, he will conquer the enemy.
2. If Caesar should come, he would conquer the enemy.
3. If Caesar had come, he would have conquered the enemy.
4. If he were in this place, I should see him.
5. If they determine to wage war, they will fortify the town.
6. If they should determine to wage war, they would fortify the town.
7. If they had determined to wage war, they would have fortified the town.
8. He is a cruel man and no condition of peace will be accepted by him.
9. This place is near[1] the sea and is inhabited by brave men.
10. A river which is very broad divides the city into two parts.
11. His father had been called the friend of the Roman people.
12. If the Germans send hostages, we will not lay waste their fields.
13. If the Germans had not sent hostages, we should have laid waste their fields.
14. He reigned at Rome twenty years.
15. Caesar is a better man than Cicero.
16. He was called King of the Romans.
17. The city will be seized by the enemy.
18. The general will conquer the Persians in many battles.

1 near, *ad*, with acc.

LESSON XXVIII.

DEPONENT VERBS.

REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVE USES. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS. ABLATIVE WITH UTOR, ETC.

297.

Deponent Verbs are *passive in form* and *active in meaning.*

They have, in addition to the passive, the following active forms:

(1) The active form of the future infinitive, instead of the passive.

(2) The active forms of the participles.

(3) The gerund and the supine.

298.

Deponent verbs occur in all four conjugations.

They are conjugated in full, like a regular passive verb in the indicative, subjunctive and imperative.

299.

Examples of Conjugation of Deponents.

Hortor, *I urge, exhort.*

Principal parts—**hortor, hortari, hortatus sum.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
hortor	hortamur
hortaris	hortamini
hortatur	hortantur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
hortabar	hortabamur
hortabaris	hortabamini
hortabatur	hortabantur

FUTURE.

hortabor	hortabimur
hortaberis	hortabimini
hortabitur	hortabuntur

PERFECT.

hortatus sum	hortati sumus
hortatus es	hortati estis
hortatus est	hortati sunt

PLUPERFECT.

hortatus eram	hortati eramus
hortatus eras	hortati eratis
hortatus erat	hortati erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

hortatus ero	hortati erimus
hortatus eris	hortati eritis
hortatus erit	hortati erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

horter	hortemur
horteris	hortemini
hortetur	hortentur

IMPERFECT.

hortarer	hortaremur
hortareris	hortaremini
hortaretur	hortarentur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
hortatus sim	hortati simus
hortatus sis	hortati sitis
hortatus sit	hortati sint

PLUPERFECT.

hortatus essem	hortati essemus
hortatus esses	hortati essetis
hortatus esset	hortati essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	hortare	hortamini
	hortator	——
	hortator	hortantor

INFINITIVES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres.	hortari	*Pres.*	hortans
Perf.	hortatus esse	*Fut.*	hortaturus
Fut.	hortaturus esse.	*Perf.*	hortatus
		Ger.	hortandus

SUPINE.	GERUND.
hortatum	hortandi
hortatu	hortando
	hortandum
	hortando

(*a*) In the same way the deponents of the other conjugations are formed.

(*b*) Write the Infinitives and Participles of the following deponents:

arbitror, -ari, -atus sum, *to think.*
polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, *to promise.*
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *to follow.*
potior, potiri, potitus sum, *to take possession of, to acquire.*

300.

Review of Subjunctive Uses.

We have now learned that the Subjunctive is used:

(1) In *final clauses* expressing purpose.
(2) In *consecutive clauses* expressing result.
(3) To express an *exhortation* or *concession.*
(4) To express a *wish.*
(5) In *temporal clauses* with *cum* (when), expressing imperfect or pluperfect time.
(6) With *cum* (since) *causal* or *cum* (although) *concessive.*
(7) In *conditional sentences* (less vivid future and contrary to fact).

301.

Indirect Questions.

RULE 40.—The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions.

An Indirect Question is a clause beginning with an interrogative word (that is, an interrogative pronoun or adverb), the clause being used as the subject or object of a verb.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quid facis?
   What are you doing?
2. Quaerit *quid facias*.
   He asks *what you are doing*.
3. Per exploratores cognovit *quid hostes facerent*.
   He learned through the scouts *what the enemy were doing*.
4. Quis hunc librum scripsit?
   Who wrote this book?
5. Nescio *quis eum scripserit*.
   I do not know *who wrote it*.
6. Quis hos libros de bello Gallico scripsit?
   Who wrote these books about the Gallic war?
7. Scimus *quis eos scripserit*.
   We know *who wrote them*.

Observe that Examples 1, 4 and 6 are direct questions, with the verb in the *Indicative;* and that the other examples are *indirect questions*, with the verb in the *Subjunctive*.

302.

Ablative as Object.

RULE 41.—The deponents *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior* and *vescor* take the object in the ablative case, instead of in the accusative.

Observe that this rule does *not* apply to the other deponents (which take an object in the *accusative*), but *only* to the five verbs named.

303.

Vocabulary 26.

(Study also meanings of verbs in Sec. 299, b.)

conor, -ari, conatus sum, *to attempt, try.*
proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, *to set out.*
revertor, -i, reversus sum, *to return.*
utor, uti, usus sum, *to use, adopt.*
cognosco, -ere, -novi, -nitum, *to find out, learn, know.*
iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum, *to order.*
maturo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to hasten, make haste.*
praemitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, *to send forward.*
Catamantaloedes, -is (m.), *name of a Gallic chief.*
impedimentum, -i (n.), *hindrance, pl. baggage.*
pars, partis (f.), *part, direction.*
princeps, principis (m.), *chief man, leader.*
qualis, -e (interr. adj.), *of what sort, what.*

ante (*adv.*), *before.*
igitur, *therefore.*
quoque, *also.*
unde, *whence, from which.*

304.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Helvetii id[1], quod constituerant, facere conantur.
2. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci.
3. Eodem consilio usi sunt.
4. Augustus et Antonius igitur contra eos profecti sunt.
5. Caesar cum tribus legionibus a provincia profectus est.
6. Quae civitates in armis essent quaerebat.
7. Helvetii copias trans flumen ducere conabantur.
8. Qualis esset natura montis qui cognoscerent misit.
9. Caesar equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant quas in partes iter faciant.
10. Helvetios in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit.
11. Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent.
12. (a) In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano,
    (b) cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat,
    (c) et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat,
    (d) ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat.

---

1 id, object of *facere*.

305.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. We shall attempt; they attempted.
2. They have set out; they think.
3. Caesar followed the enemy with all his forces.
4. The Helvetians will make a journey through the province.
5. If the Helvetians should come, we would keep them from the province.
6. If the Helvetians come, you will keep them from your territories.
7. The Helvetians are attempting to capture the town.
8. For three days he had followed the cavalry of the enemy.
9. On the following day they moved the camp from that place.
10. At the fourth watch let us try to capture the enemy's camp.
11. Although they took possession of the camp, yet they captured few of the enemy.
12. When the battle had been fought for a long time,[1] our men took possession of the baggage and the camp.
13. These states, having adopted the same plan, will burn their own towns and villages.
14. Let Labienus follow the enemy with the cavalry and four legions.
15. They will fight fiercely that they may gain possession of the territories of the Gauls, the friends and allies of the Roman people.

---

1 When the battle had been fought for a long time, *cum diu pugnatum esset.*

LESSON XXIX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

DATIVE OF AGENT.

POSSUM AND OTHER COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

306.

The Periphrastic Conjugations.

(1) The *First* or *Active* Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the tenses of esse with the *Future Participle, Active.* It expresses what is *about* to happen.

(2) The *Second* or *Passive* Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the tenses of esse with the *Gerundive.* It expresses what *must* or *ought to* be done.

307.

FIRST (ACTIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
laudaturus sum, *I am about to praise.*	laudaturus sim.
IMPERFECT.	
laudaturus eram, *I was about to praise.*	laudaturus essem.
FUTURE.	
laudaturus ero, *I shall be about to praise.*	
PERFECT.	
laudaturus fui, *I have been about to praise.*	laudaturus fuerim.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUPERFECT.	
laudaturus fueram, *I had been about to praise.*	laudaturus fuissem.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
laudaturus fuero, *I shall have been about to praise.*	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudaturus esse. *Perf.* laudaturus fuisse.

308.

SECOND (PASSIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
laudandus sum, *I am to be praised.*	laudandus sim.
IMPERFECT.	
laudandus eram, *I was to be praised.*	laudandus essem.
FUTURE.	
laudandus ero, *I shall be (worthy) to be praised.*	
PERFECT.	
laudandus fui, *I was to be praised.*	laudandus fuerim.
PLUPERFECT.	
laudandus fueram, *I had been (worthy) to be praised.*	laudandus fuissem.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
laudandus fuero, *I shall have been (worthy) to be praised.*	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudandus esse. *Perf.* laudandus fuisse.

NOTE.—Each tense of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* is conjugated in full, as:

laudaturus sum	laudaturi sumus
laudaturus es	laudaturi estis
laudaturus est	laudaturi sunt, etc.

Observe also that the *future participle* and *gerundive endings* are changed to agree in *gender, number and case* with the subject; both these forms (in all verbs) being declined like **bonus, -a, -um.**

309.

Dative of Agent.

RULE 42.—The Agent with the Second, or Passive, Periphrastic Conjugation (Gerundive) is indicated by the Dative Case.

NOTE.—This use of the Dative denotes *the person on whom the necessity rests.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Omnia *Caesari* facienda sunt.
   All things must be done *by Caesar.*

2. Obsides *vobis* accipiendi sunt.
   Hostages must be accepted *by you.*

3. Hoc opus *civibus* conficiendum est.
   This work must be accomplished *by the citizens.*

310.

Compounds of Sum.

(1) The conjugation of *sum* has been given in Sec. 189.

(2) *Sum* is compounded with certain prepositions, such *ab* (from), *ad* (to), etc., and is conjugated without change except when compounded with *pro* (*prod*) or the adjective *potis*.

(3) Compounded with *pro*, the letter *d* (*prod*) is added before the tenses of *sum* beginning with the vowel *e*; as: *proderam* instead of *proeram*, *prodero* instead of *proero*, etc.

(4) These compounds of *sum* are:

ab-sum, -esse, a-fui, *to be away from, be absent.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be present, side with.*

de-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be wanting.*

in-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be among.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be present at.*

ob-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be opposed to.*

possum, posse, potui, *to be able.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be at the head of, in command of.*

pro-sum, prod-esse, pro-fui, *to be useful.*

supersum, -esse, -fui, *to survive.*

NOTE.—These compounds of *sum* (except *possum*) take the object in the *dative case.*

311.

Possum, *I am able, I can.*

Possum is a compound of *potis* and *sum.*

Principal parts—**possum, posse, potui.**

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
SINGULAR.	
pos-sum, *I am able.*	pos-sim, *I may be able.*
pot-es, *you are able.*	pos-sis, *you may be able.*
pot-est, *he is able.*	pos-sit, *he may be able.*
PLURAL.	
pos-sumus, *we are able.*	pos-simus, *we may be able.*
pot-estis, *you are able.*	pos-sitis, *you may be able.*
pos-sunt, *they are able.*	pos-sint, *they may be able.*

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	
pot-eram, *I was able.*	pos-sem, *I might be able.*
pot-eras, *you were able.*	pos-ses, *you might be able.*
pot-erat, *he was able.*	pos-set, *he might be able.*
PLURAL.	
pot-eramus, *we were able.*	pos-semus, *we might be able.*
pot-eratis, *you were able.*	pos-setis, *you might be able.*
pot-erant, *they were able.*	pos-sent, *they might be able.*

FUTURE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
SINGULAR.	
pot-ero, *I shall be able.*	
pot-eris, *you will be able.*	
pot-erit, *he will be able.*	
PLURAL.	
pot-erimus, *we shall be able.*	
pot-eritis, *you will be able.*	
pot-erunt, *they will be able.*	

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	
potu-i, *I have been able.*	potu-erim, *I may have been able.*
potu-isti, *you have been able.*	potu-eris, *you may have been able.*
potu-it, *he has been able.*	potu-erit, *he may have been able.*
PLURAL.	
potu-imus, *we have been able.*	potu-erimus, *we may have been able.*
potu-istis, *you have been able.*	potu-eritis, *you may have been able.*
potu-erunt, *they have been able.*	potu-erint, *they may have been able.*

PLUPERFECT.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
SINGULAR.	
potu-eram, *I had been able.*	potu-issem, *I might have been able.*
potu-eras, *you had been able.*	potu-isses, *you might have been able.*
potu-erat, *he had been able.*	potu-isset, *he might have been able.*
PLURAL.	
potu-eramus, *we had been able.*	potu-issemus, *we might have been able.*
potu-eratis, *you had been able.*	potu-issetis, *you might have been able.*
potu-erant, *they had been able.*	potu-issent, *they might have been able.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
potu-ero, *I shall have been able.*	potu-erimus, *we shall have been able.*
potu-eris, *you will have been able.*	potu-eritis, *you will have been able.*
potu-erit, *he will have been able.*	potu-erint, *they will have been able.*

INFINITIVES.

Pres. posse, *to be able.* *Perf.* potu-isse, *to have been able.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. potens, *powerful* (*used only as an adj.*).

312.

Vocabulary 27.

acies, -ei (f.), *line of battle.*
Athenae, -arum (f. pl.), *Athens.*
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*
Carthago, -inis (f.), *Carthage.*
cultus, -us (m.), *civilization, culture.*
donum, -i (n.), *gift.*
fuga, -ae (f.), *flight.*
humanitas, -atis (f.), *refinement, civilization.*
institutum, -i (n.), *custom.*
lex, legis (f.), *law.*
mensis, -is (m.), *month.*
mercator, -oris (m.), *trader, merchant.*
mille passuum, *mile.*
praesidium, -i (n.), *guard.*
regina, -ae (f.), *queen.*
silva, -ae (f.), *wood, forest.*
divisus, -a, -um, *divided.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of.*
absum, -esse, fui, *to be absent or away from.*
commeo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to resort to, visit.*
effemino, -are, -avi, -atum, *to weaken, enervate.*
importo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to import, bring in.*
relinquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, *to leave behind, abandon.*

313.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Hostes vincere possumus.
2. Potestisne hostes vincere?
3. Hostes nobis vincendi sunt.
4. Hostes victuri sumus.
5. Vos amici estis populi Romani; nos, inimici.
6. Caesar milites hortatus est ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinerent.
7. Gallia est omnes divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua[1] Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.
8. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se[2] differunt.
9. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.
10. (a) Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, (b) propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime[3] absunt, (c) minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant (d) atque ea[4] quae ad effeminandos animos[5] pertinent important; (e) proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.
11. (a) Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, (b) quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, (c) cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

In the above extract from Caesar (sentences 7-11 inc.), explain the case of (a) *quarum*, (b) of *aliam*, (c) of *ipsorum*, (d) of *institutis*, (e) of *Aquitanis*, (f) of *horum*.

What is the difference between "*suis finibus*" and "*eorum finibus*."

---

1 ipsorum lingua, *in their language.*
2 inter se, *from one another.*
3 longissime sunt, *are furthest distant.*
4 ea, object of *important.*
5 ad effeminandos amnios, *to weaken the mind,*

314.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. This town must be stormed by our soldiers.
2. Hostages must be sent to Caesar by us.[1]
3. I do not doubt that[2] our soldiers will fight most bravely.
4. These things will be a care[3] to him.
5. They have come to see the camp.
6. Caesar was in command of[4] the army.
7. He was able to be present.
8. He has been away from the city for three months.
9. The wall is two miles long, thirty feet high and five feet broad.
10. I am about to write a letter.
11. He drew up a line of battle of five legions, and left two as a guard for the camp.
12. A small city must be built for this tribe.
13. The queen will give many gifts to the king's son.
14. Who is able to take that large city?
15. Although the enemy fought bravely,[5] yet they were not able to capture the town.
16. Wars must be waged in the territories of the Gauls.
17. He was absent for four days.
18. I cannot defend Caesar from the Helvetians.
19. The Helvetians are about to attack the Aedui.
20. The camp must be fortified by the soldiers.[1]

---

1 See Section 309. 2 See Section 278. 3 See Section 270.
4 Was in command of, *praefuit*, with object (army) in dative.
5 See Section 284.

LESSON XXX.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

315.

Direct Quotation.

A Direct Quotation gives the *exact words* of a speaker or writer, and is indicated by quotation marks.

EXAMPLE 1.

He said, "*I will come.*"
Dixit, "*Ego veniam.*"

316.

Indirect Quotation.

An Indirect Quotation gives the *idea* expressed by a speaker or writer, *but does not give his exact words.*

Thus, we may change the *direct quotation* (in Ex. 1) to an *indirect quotation*, as follows:

EXAMPLE 2.

He said *that he would come.*
or, He said *he would come.*
Dixit *se venturum esse.*

Observe that in Ex. 1 we have the usual construction of a *direct* statement: subject in *nominative case* and verb in the *indicative mood.*

Also that in Ex. 2 the subject (*he* or *himself*) is in the *accusative case*, while the verb is in the *infinitive*. That is, we may express the Latin idiom (of the indirect quotation in Ex. 2) in English words as follows:

Ex. 2. He said *that he would come.*

Latin idiom in English words:
He said *himself to be about to come.*

Translation:
Dixit *se venturum esse.*

This indirect quotation in Latin is called *Indirect Discourse.*

RULE 43.—*Indirect Discourse* is indirect quotation and is used after verbs of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, *telling*, and the like.

RULE 44.—The verb in the *principal clause* in Indirect Discourse is in the *infinitive;* the verb of a *dependent or subordinate clause* is in the *subjunctive.*

RULE 45.—The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

EXAMPLES.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
1. Dicit, "*Ego venio.*" He says, "*I am coming.*"	1. Dicit *se venire.* He says *that he is coming.*
2. Dixit, "*Ego venio.*" He said, "*I am coming.*"	2. Dixit *se venire.* He said *that he was coming.*

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
3. Dicit, "*Ego veniam.*" He says, "*I will come.*"	3. Dicit *se venturum esse.* He says *that he will come.*
4. Dixit, "*Ego veniam.*" He said, "*I will come.*"	4. Dixit *se venturum esse.* He said *that he would come.*
5. Dicit, "*Germani veniunt.*" He says, "*The Germans are coming.*"	5. Dicit *Germanos venire.* He says *that the Germans are coming.*
6. Dixit, "*Germani veniunt.*" He said, "*The Germans are coming.*"	6. Dixit *Germanos venire.* He said *that the Germans were coming.*
7. Dixit, "*Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, veniunt.*" He said, "*The Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, are coming.*	7. Dixit *Germanos, qui trans Rhenum incolant, venire.* He said *that the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, were coming.*
8. Dixit, "*Germani agros occupaverunt.*" He said, "*The Germans have seized the territories.*"	8. Dixit *Germanos agros occupavisse.* He said *that the Germans had seized the territories.*
9. Dico, "*Is veniet.*" I say, "*He will come.*"	9. Dico *eum venturum esse.* I say *that he will come.*
10. Dixerunt, "*Gallos vincemus.*" They said, "*We will conquer the Gauls.*"	10. Dixerunt *se Gallos victuros esse.* They said *that they would conquer the Gauls.*

Observe, from the preceding examples:

(1) That *future time* in Indirect Discourse is expressed by the *future infinitive* (Exs. 3, 4, 9, 10);

(2) Also, that the *present infinitive* in Indirect Discourse expresses *present time* after a *present indicative* in the leading clause (Exs. 1, 5), and *past time* after a *past tense indicative* in the leading clause (Exs. 2, 6);

(3) And that the *perfect infinitive* is translated like a *past indicative* after a *present indicative* in the leading clause, and like a *pluperfect indicative* after a *past indicative* in the leading clause (Ex. 8).

Compare the following:

1. Dicunt *Gallos victos esse.*
   They say *that the Gauls were conquered* or *have been conquered.*
2. Dixerunt *Gallos victos esse.*
   They said *that the Gauls had been conquered.*

317.

Vocabulary 28.

Alps, -ium (m.), *the Alps.*
alter, altera, alterum, *other;* alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.*
attingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, *to touch.*
certiorem facere, *to inform.*
convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to come together, assemble.*
explorator, -is (m.), *scout, spy.*
factio, -onis (f.), *party, faction.*
Hannibal, -is (m.), *Hannibal.*
initium, -i (n.), *beginning;* initium capere, *to begin.*
iter, itineris (n.), *journey, march;* iter facere, *to march.*
nunquam (adv.), *never.*
obtineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *to obtain, hold.*
orior, -iri, -ortus sum, *to arise, spring up;* sol oriens, *the rising sun, sunrise, the east.*
principatus, -us (m.), *first place, lead, leadership.*
septentriones, -um (m. pl.), *the north.*
sol, solis (m.), *the sun;* sol oriens, *sunrise;* occasus solis, *sunset.*
specto, -are, -avi, -atum, *to lie towards, to face.*
ubi (adv.), *where, when.*
verus, -a, -um, *true.*

318.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Dico me amicum populi Romani esse.
2. Dicit vos amicos populi Romani esse.
3. Dicit, "Vos amici populi Romani estis."
4. Dixerunt Caesarem cum omnibus copiis venire.
5. Cognosco te coniurationem nobilitatis fecisse.
6. Dicit milites venisse.
7. Dixit milites venisse.
8. Caesari nuntiatum est Helvetios per provinciam iter facere conari[1].
9. Per exploratores Caesar cognovit Helvetios castra movisse.
10. Romani cognoverunt Hannibalem exercitum per Alpes in Italiam duxisse.
11. (a) Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est[2], initium capit a flumine Rhodano; (b) continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; (c) attingit etiam ab[3] Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones.
12. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentriones et orientum solem.
13. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet, spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

---

1 conari, *were attempting.*
2 quam . . . dictum est, *which it has been said the Gauls hold.*
3 Abl., *on the side of.*

319.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He says, "I will do it."
2. He says that he will do it.
3. He said, "I will do it."
4. He said that he would do it.
5. He says that the Gauls are laying waste the fields.
6. He says that the Gauls have laid waste the fields.
7. He said that the Gauls were laying waste the fields.
8. He said that the Gauls had laid waste the fields.
9. He said, "The Gauls have laid waste the fields."
10. The scouts reported that the Germans had assembled at the banks of the Rhine.
11. The Helvetians think that all things[1] are prepared.
12. They say that he has a very large army and that the soldiers are brave.
13. He says that he has a larger army.
14. He says that he will accept hostages.
15. He says that hostages must be sent by them.
16. He learned that these things were true.
17. Caesar was informed[2] that Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had led his whole army into our province.
18. He said that the enemy would never conquer the city.

---

1 All things, *omnia.*

2 Caesar was informed, *Caesar certior factus est.*

LESSON XXXI

IRREGULAR VERBS.

VOLO, NOLO, MALO. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

320.

Volo, Nolo, Malo.

NOTE.—*Nolo* (I do not wish, am unwilling) is a contracted form of the compound of *non* (not) and *volo* (I wish, am willing); *malo* (I prefer, wish rather) is a compound of *magis* (rather) and *volo*.

Volo, velle, volui, *to be willing, to wish.*
Nolo, nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
Malo, malle, malui, *to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

volo	nolo	malo
vis	non vis	mavis
vult	non vult	mavult
volumus	nolumus	malumus
vultis	non vultis	mavultis
volunt	nolunt	malunt

IMPERFECT.

volebam	nolebam	malebam

FUTURE.

volam	nolam	malam

PERFECT.

volui	nolui	malui

PLUPERFECT.

volueram	nolueram	malueram

FUTURE PERFECT.

voluero	noluero	maluero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

velim	nolim	malim
velis	nolis	malis
velit	nolit	malit
velimus	nolimus	malimus
velitis	nolitis	malitis
velint	nolint	malint

IMPERFECT.

vellem	nollem	mallem
velles	nolles	malles
vellet	nollet	mallet
vellemus	nollemus	mallemus
velletis	nolletis	malletis
vellent	nollent	mallent

PERFECT.

voluerim	noluerim	maluerim

PLUPERFECT.

voluissem	noluissem	maluissem

IMPERATIVE.

(none)	*Pres.* nōlī	nōlīte	(none)
	Fut. nōlīto	nōlītote	
	nōlīto	nōluntō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	noluisse	maluisse

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	volens	nolens

Observe that the Imp., Fut., Perf., Plup. and Fut. Perf. Indicative and the Perf. and Plup. Subjunctive are conjugated in full in all persons, sing. and plur., like regular third conjugation forms.

321.

Dative with Adjectives.

RULE 46.—*The Dative* is used *after adjectives* to denote that to which the quality expressed by the adjective is directed.

It is used after adjectives meaning *like, unlike, fit, suitable, pleasing, near*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. Haec *nobis* grata sunt.
   These things are pleasing *to us.*
2. Caesar locum idoneum *castris* delegit.
   Caesar selected a place suitable *for a camp.*
3. Puer est similis *patrī.*
   The boy is like *his father.*

RULE 47.—Prohibition is expressed by (1) *nē* with the imperative or 2nd pers. subjunctive; (2) by *nōlī* with the infinitive.

322.

Vocabulary 29.

aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum, *to build, construct.*
bellicosus, -a, -um, *warlike.*
debeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *to owe*; debet, *he ought, etc.*
gens, gentis (f.), tribe, clan.
gratus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
imperium, -i (n.), *control, supreme power, chief power.*
iter facere, *to make a journey, to march.*
legatus, -i (m.), *ambassador, envoy.*
libertas, -atis (f.), *liberty.*
longe (adv.), *by far.*
maleficium, -i (n.), *evil-doing, damage, harm.*
malo, malle, malui, *prefer.*
maturo, -ari, -avi, -atum, *to hasten.*
nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *to announce, report.*
pars, partis (f.), *direction, part, side;* una ex parte, *on one side.*
pervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to arrive at, come to, push on to.*
praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitum, *to excel, surpass.*
renuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *to bring back word to, to report.*
salus, -utis (f.), *safety.*
Suevi, -orum (m. pl.), *the Suevi.*
vereor, -eri, veritus sum, *to fear.*

323.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Pro patria pugnare volumus.
2. Vultisne urbem munire?
3. Num vos, homines liberi, urbem dedere vultis?

4. Pro salute nostrae urbis et pro libertate pugnare volumus.
5. Dicit se id facere velle.
6. Dixit se id facere velle.
7. Nonne pro patria, cives, pugnare vultis?
8. Oppidum oppugnaturi sumus.
9. Dixerunt nostros milites oppidum oppugnaturos esse.
10. Caesari renuntiatur Helvetios iter per provinciam facere velle.
11. Apud Helvetios longe[1] nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix.
12. Is[2] M. Messala[3] et M. Pisone[3] consulibus[3] regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse,[4] cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri.
13. Id hoc[5] facilius eis persuasit, quod[6] undique loci natura Helvetii continentur[7]; una ex parte[8] flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.
14. His rebus fiebat[9] ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi[10] magno dolore adficiebantur.
15. Pro[11] multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL,* in latitudinem CLXXX* patebant.

---

1 longe, *by far*.
2 Is, *he*.
3 In the consulship of Messala and Piso.
4 perfacile esse, *that it was easy*.
5 hoc, *for this reason*.
6 quod, *because*.
7 continentur, *are hemmed in*.
8 una ex parte, *on one side*.
9 His rebus fiebat, *for these reasons it resulted*.
10 qua ex parte . . . cupidi, *for which reason, being men eager for war*.
11 pro, *considering*.

* Write the above numbers in full in Latin.

324.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They cannot defend the town.
2. Do you, citizens, wish to surrender the town?
3. We prefer to die rather than to surrender the town.
4. Since you excel all in bravery, you can take possession of Gaul.
5. The Helvetians wished to wage war with their neighbors.
6. They said that they wished to march[1] through our territories without any evil-doing.
7. I fear that the citizens are not able to defend the town.
8. When this is reported to Caesar, that they are attempting to march[1] through our province, he hastens[2] to set out from the city.
9. By the greatest possible marches he hastens[3] into farther Gaul and pushes on[4] to Geneva.
10. The Aedui, since they cannot protect[5] themselves and their property[6] from them, send ambassadors to Caesar.
11. The tribe of the Suevi is by far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans.
12. The consul said: "I have conquered the enemy and the victory is pleasing to my country."
13. The consul said that he had conquered the enemy and that the victory was pleasing to his country.
14. He was unwilling to do this.
15. Caesar is not able to construct a wall.
16. The Helvetians are not able to send ambassadors to Caesar.
17. Who is able to take that large city?
18. They said that they had not been able to defend their territories.

---

1 iter facere.
2 maturat.
3 contendit.
4 pervenit.
5 defendere.
6 suaque.

LESSON XXXII.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

FERO AND ITS COMPOUNDS. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

325.

Fero, *to bear, endure.*

Principal parts (*active*), **fero, ferre, tuli, latum.**

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
fero	ferimus
fers	fertis
fert	ferunt
IMPERFECT.	
ferebam	ferebamus
ferebas	ferebatis
ferebat	ferebant
FUTURE.	
feram	feremus
feres	feretis
feret	ferent
PERFECT.	
tuli	tulimus
tulisti	tulistis
tulit	tulerunt

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PLUPERFECT.	
tuleram	tuleramus
tuleras	tuleratis
tulerat	tulerant
FUTURE PERFECT.	
tulero	tulerimus
tuleris	tuleritis
tulerit	tulerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
feram	feramus
feras	feratis
ferat	ferant
IMPERFECT.	
ferrem	ferremus
ferres	ferretis
ferret	ferrent
PERFECT.	
tulerim	tulerimus
tuleris	tuleritis
tulerit	tulerint
PLUPERFECT.	
tulissem	tulissemus
tulisses	tulissetis
tulisset	tulissent

IMPERATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	fer	ferte
Fut.	ferto	fertote
	ferto	ferunto

INFINITIVES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres.	ferre	*Pres.*	ferens
Perf.	tulisse	*Fut.*	laturus
Fut.	laturus esse		

SUPINE.	GERUND.
latum	ferendi
latu	ferendo
	ferendum
	ferendo

326.
Passive Voice of Fero.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
feror	ferimur
ferris	ferimini
fertur	feruntor
IMPERFECT.	
ferebar	ferebamur
ferebaris	ferebamini
ferebatur	ferebantur

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
FUTURE.	
ferar	feremur
fereris	feremini
feretur	ferentur
PERFECT.	
latus sum	lati sumus
latus es	lati estis
latus est	lati sunt
PLUPERFECT.	
latus eram	lati eramus
latus eras	lati eratis
latus erat	lati erant
FUTURE PERFECT.	
latus ero	lati erimus
latus eris	lati eritis
latus erit	lati erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
ferar	feramur
feraris	feramini
ferattir	ferantur
IMPERFECT.	
ferrer	ferremur
ferreris	ferremini
ferretur	ferrentur
PERFECT.	
latus sim	lati simus
latus sis	lati sitis
latus sit	lati sint

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PLUPERFECT.	
latus essem	lati essemus
latus esses	lati essetis
latus esset	lati essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ferre	ferimini
Fut.	fertor	——
	feritor	feruntor

INFINITIVES.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres. ferri	*Perf.* latus
Perf. latus esse	*Gerundive* ferendus
Fut. latum iri	

NOTE.—Review articles for verb formation in Chapters XIII. and XXII. Observe that *fero*, although an irregular verb, follows these rules exactly.

327.

Compounds of Fero.

Among the compounds of *fero* are:

ad-fero, ad-ferre, at-tuli, ad-latum or al-latum, *bring to, carry to.*

con-fero, con-ferre, con-tuli, con-latum or col-latum; *bring together, collect.*

de-fero, de-ferre, de-tuli, de-latum, *to carry away, confer upon, lay before.*

dif-fero, dif-ferre, dis-tuli, di-latum, *to differ.*

in-fero, in-ferre, in-tuli, in-latum or il-latum, *bring into, bring upon;* bellum inferre, *to make war upon.*

re-fero, re-ferre, ret-tuli, re-latum, *bring back, carry back.*

328.

Concessive Clauses.

RULE 48.—Clauses expressing concession [that is, introduced by *cum* (although), *ut* (even if), etc.] take the Subjunctive.

EXAMPLE.

Cum esset inimicus populi Romani, etc.
Although he was an enemy of the Roman people.

329.

Vocabulary 30.

auxilium, -i (n.), *aid, help; pl. auxiliaries*; auxilium ferre, *to bring aid.*
colloquium, -i (n.), *conference.*
consideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, *settle.*
gens, gentis (f.), *tribe, clan, nation.*
navis, navis (f.), *ship, boat.*
nunquam, *never.*
paro, -are, -avi, -atum, *to prepare, get ready.*
polliceor, -eri, pollicitus sum, *promise.*
poena, -ae (f.), *punishment, penalty.*
satisfacio, -ere, -feci, -factum, *satisfy, make amends to.*
servitus, -utis (f.), *slavery, servitude.*
socius, -i (m.), *ally.*

330.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Ferimus; tulerunt; ne feramus.
2. Feramus; ferent; ferant; tulisti.
3. Volunt; voluerunt; maluisti; potestis.
4. Non vultis; non possumus; laturus esse.
5. Nos, homines liberi, servitutem ferre non possumus.
6. Helvetii impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt.
7. Populus liber servitutem nunquam feret.
8. Bellum in civitatibus finitimis inferamus.
9. Minus facile finitimis belle inferre possunt.
10. Suis auxilium ferre non potuerunt.
11. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti[1] ea quae polliceantur facturos[2] intellegat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item[3] si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese[4] cum iis pacem esse facturum.[5]
12. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri[6] potiti sunt.

---

1 uti = ut, *so that.*
2 facturos = eos facturos esse, *that they will do.*
3 item, *likewise.*
4 sese = se.
5 esse facturum = facturum esse.
6 our men.

331.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They endure; we are not willing to endure.
2. Do you wish to make war upon us?
3. Let us prefer to fight rather than[1] to endure slavery.
4. This speech having been delivered,[2] he dismissed[3] the council.
5. He had been called king and friend by the senate.
6. Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had settled[3] in their territories and had seized a third part of the Sequanian territory, which is the best part of all Gaul.
7. To this place,[4] as had been arranged, they came for a conference.
8. This battle having been reported across the Rhine, the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine, began to return home.
9. When Caesar was in hither Gaul, he was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring[5] against the Roman people.
10. Caesar says that he will not accept hostages.
11. When the enemy brought aid to the Helvetians, Caesar set out from the city.
12. They are preparing many ships and will make war upon the Romans.
13. Many states made war on the Roman people.
14. He had said that they had not sent ambassadors.
15. The Romans fortified the camp with a very high wall.
16. A small city must be built for this tribe.

---

1 rather than, *quam*.
2 habeo.
3 consideo.
4 eo, *to this place*.
5 conspire, *conjuro*.

LESSON XXXIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

EO AND ITS COMPOUNDS. FIO. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

332.

Eo, *to go.*

Principal parts, **eo, ire, ivi (ii), itum.**

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
eo	imus
is	itis
it	eunt
IMPERFECT.	
ibam	ibamus
ibas	ibatis
ibat	ibant
FUTURE.	
ibo	ibimus
ibis	ibitis
ibit	ibunt
PERFECT.	
ivi	ivimus
ivisti	ivistis
ivit	iverunt

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PLUPERFECT.	
iveram	iveramus
iveras	iveratis
iverat	iverant
FUTURE PERFECT.	
ivero	iverimus
iveris	iveritis
iverit	iverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
eam	eamus
eas	eatis
eat	eant
IMPERFECT.	
irem	iremus
ires	iretis
iret	irent
PERFECT.	
iverim	iverimus
iveris	iveritis
iverit	iverint
PLUPERFECT.	
ivissem	ivissemus
ivisses	ivissetis
ivisset	ivissent

IMPERATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	i	ite
Fut.	ito	itote
	ito	eunto

INFINITIVES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres.	ire	*Pres.*	iens
Perf.	ivisse	*Fut.*	iturus
Fut.	iturus esse		

SUPINE.	GERUND.
itum	eundi
itu	eundo
	eundum
	eundo

333.
Declension of Iens.

	SINGULAR.	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iens	iens
Gen.	euntis	euntis
Dat.	eunti	eunti
Acc.	euntem	iens
Voc.	iens	iens
Abl.	eunte	eunte
	PLURAL.	
Nom.	euntes	euntia
Gen.	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntes	euntia
Voc.	euntes	euntia
Abl.	euntibus	euntibus

334.

Fio, *to become, be made.*

NOTE.—*Fio* is used as the Passive Voice of the regular verb *facio, facere, feci, factum* (to make).

Principal parts, **fio, fieri, factus sum.**

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRESENT.	
fio	fimus
fis	fitis
fit	fiunt
IMPERFECT.	
fiebam	fiebamus
fiebas	fiebatis
fiebat	fiebant
FUTURE.	
fiam	fiemus
fies	fietis
fiet	fient
PERFECT.	
factus sum	facti sumus
factus es	facti estis
factus est	facti sunt
PLUPERFECT.	
factus eram	facti eramus
factus eras	facti eratis
factus erat	facti erant

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Future Perfect.	
factus ero	facti erimus
factus eris	facti eritis
factus erit	facti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	
fiam	fiamus
fias	fiatis
fiat	fiant
Imperfect.	
fierem	fieremus
fieres	fieretis
fieret	fierent
Perfect.	
factus sim	facti simus
factus sis	facti sitis
factus sit	facti sint
Pluperfect.	
factus essem	facti essemus
factus esses	facti essetis
factus esset	facti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fi	fite
Fut.	fito	fitote
	fito	fiunto

INFINITIVES.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres. fieri	*Perf.* factus
Perf. factus esse	*Gerundive* faciendus
Fut. factum iri	

NOTE.—Nearly all the compounds of *facio* form the passive regularly, like the passive of *conficio*, which, instead of *conflo*, is *conficior*, *confici*, *confectus sum*.

335.

Impersonal Verbs.

An Impersonal Verb is a verb that, in Latin, has no personal subject.

NOTE.—In translating impersonal verbs into English, we supply the personal subject *it*.

The Impersonal Verbs are conjugated, *in the third person only*, in the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive*. They have also the three *Infinitives* and the *Gerund*, but no other forms.

336.

Among the more important Impersonal Verbs are:

constat, *it is plain, it is evident.*
licet, *it is allowed.*
oportet, *it is necessary, needful, important.*
libet, *it pleases.*
accidit, *it happens.*
evenit, *it results, it comes to pass.*

Write the conjugation of *licet* in full.

337.

Vocabulary 31.

adorior, -iri, -ortus sum, *to attack.*

exeo, -ire, -ii[1], -itum, *to go out from.*

impeditus, -a, -um, *impeded.*

impero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to command, order.*

inopinans, -ntis, *not expecting.*

instituo, -uere, -ui, -utum, *to set about, begin.*

luna, -ae (f.), *the moon.*

paro, -are, -avi, -atum, *to make ready, prepare.*

peto, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *to ask, request, petition.*

plenus, -a, -um, *full.*

servo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to preserve, save, keep.*

traduco, *or* transduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, *to lead over, lead across.*

transeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *to go across, cross over.*

Veneti, -orum (m. pl.), *the Veneti (a tribe on the west coast of Gaul).*

fere (adv.), *almost.*

item (adv.), *likewise, in like manner.*

nihil[2] (n.), *nothing.*

nondum (adv.), *not yet.*

---

1 In compounds of *eo* the perfect *ivi* is usually contracted to *-ii*; as *exii*, rather than *exivi*.

2 Indeclinable noun.

338.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Ibimus; iverunt; ibatis; iverant; eamus.
2. Fiat; fiet; factum est; faciendum est.
3. Nihil fit; nihil faciunt.
4. Petebant ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret.
5. Hoc oppidum, propter altitudinem muri expugnare non potuit.
6. Veneti, reliquaeque civitates, bellum parare instituunt.
7. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant.
8. Accidit ut esset luna plena.
9. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant.
10. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat.
11. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum[1] pertinerent comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare.
12. Ad eas res conficiendas[2] biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt[3] in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant.
13. Ad eas res conficiendas[2] Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates sucepit.

---

1 ad proficiscendum, *to their journey*.
2 ad . . . conficiendas, *for accomplishing these things*.
3 duxerunt, *they considered*.

14. (a) In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; (b) itemque Dumnorigi Haeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

339.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Let us go; they will go; he went.
2. They went out from the city.
3. They pitched camp ten miles from the town.
4. Let us cross the river and attack the camp of the enemy.
5. He says that they will go.
6. The river was so deep that the soldiers could not cross it.
7. They say that they are able to gain the chief power of all Gaul.
8. For these reasons[1] it is coming about that the Helvetians cannot easily wage war on the neighboring states.
9. He ordered the soldiers to attack the enemy's camp.
10. As the supply of grain was small, he hastened to go to Bibracte.
11. The ambassadors of the Aedui say that Helvetians have gone out from their state.
12. If our soldiers withstand the attack of the enemy, the town will be saved.
13. The consul said that he would accept as hostages the senate and the chief men[2] of the state.
14. They say that he will come as quickly as he can.
15. He says that he is about to obtain the chief power in his own state.

1 For these reasons, *his rebus.* 2 chief men, *principes.*

LESSON XXXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

TWO ACCUSATIVES. COMPOUND AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

340.

The Ablative Absolute.

We have already learned that a *temporal clause* may be introduced by *cum* (when), as in the following example:

Cum signum dedisset, milites castra oppugnaverunt.
When he had given the signal, the soldiers attacked the camp.

But we may express the above idea of time by a different construction. We may use, in English, the independent phrase, "*having given the signal*," or "*the signal having been given*," instead of the clause beginning with *when*. So, in Latin, we may use, in place of the temporal clause, "*cum signum dedisset*," a construction like our English independent phrase, called the *Ablative Absolute*. That is, instead of "*cum signum dedisset*" (when he had given the signal), we may use the form, "*signo dato*" (the signal having been given); *signum* (signal) being put in the *ablative case*, and the verb changed to the *perfect participle pass.* (ablative singular neuter), agreeing with *signo*.

NOTE.—Observe that we change the expression to the passive form, as we have no perf. part. in the active voice of the Latin verb.

In the same way we may often render the English clause beginning with *when*, *while*, *since*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Bello confecto*, Romam rediit.

   The war having been finished,
   or, *Having finished the war,* } he returned to Rome.
   or, *When the war had been finished,*

2. *Hac oratione habita*, concilium demittit.

   This oration having been delivered, he dismisses the council.

3. *Quibus rebus cognitis*, etc.

   These facts having been made known, etc.

4. *Concilio dimisso*, ad Caesarem reverterunt.

   The council having been dismissed, they returned to Caesar.

5. *His responsis* ad Caesarem *relatis*, etc.

   These replies being reported to Caesar, etc.

6. *Concilio convocato*, eos incusavit.

   A council having been called, he rebuked them.

7. *Cognito Caesaris adventu*, Ariovistus legatos ad eum misit.

   Caesar's arrival having been made known, Ariovistus sent envoys to him.

8. *Hoc proelio* trans Rhenum *nuntiato*, Suevi domum reverti coeperunt.

   This battle having been reported across the Rhine, the Suevi began to return home.

9. Is, *M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus*, coniurationem fecit.

   He, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*,[1] made a conspiracy.

1 Lit., Messala and Piso being consuls.

10. *Sole oriente*, flumen transibimus.
At sunrise,[1] we shall cross the river.

11. *His interfectis*, nostri castris potiti sunt.
These having been killed, our men took possession of the camp.

[Translate each of the above examples of the Ablative Absolute in as many ways as possible.]

Observe (1) that the Ablative Absolute may be translated in English *by an independent phrase* (sometimes called a "nominative absolute") or by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, *since*, *although*, etc. (2) That the noun (or pronoun) in the Ablative Absolute does *not* refer to the same person or thing as the subject.

For example, in the sentence: "Orgetorix, induced by the desire for power, made a conspiracy," we cannot translate *induced*, etc., by an Ablative Absolute construction, because the noun would refer to the same person as the subject; but we must translate the sentence: "Orgetorix, regni cupiditate inductus, coniurationem fecit;" *inductus* being the nom. sing. masc. of the participle and agreeing with the subject Orgetorix.

Observe also (3) that *two nouns* (with some participle understood) *may be used in an Ablative Absolute construction*, as in Ex. 9.

From the preceding we have the following:

RULE 49.—The Ablative Absolute, consisting of a noun or pronoun with a participle (or another noun), expresses the time, cause or manner of an action.

1 Lit., the sun rising.

341.

Two Accusatives.

RULE 50.—Verbs of teaching and asking take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing asked or taught.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Eos agriculturam* docuit.
   He taught them agriculture.
2. *Te sententiam* rogo.
   I ask you your opinion.

342.

Declension of Compound and Irregular Nouns.

vis (f.), *force, strength.*

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	vis	vires
Gen.	——	virium
Dat.	——	viribus
Acc.	vim	vires
Voc.	——	vires
Abl.	vi	viribus

Deus (m.), *God.*

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	deus	dei, dii *or* di
Gen.	dei	deorum *or* deum
Dat.	deo	deis, diis *or* dis
Acc.	deum	deos
Voc.	deus	dei, dii *or* di
Abl.	deo	deis, diis *or* dis

bos, *ox, cow.*

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	bos	boves
Gen.	bovis	bovum *or* boum
Dat.	bovi	bobus *or* bubus
Acc.	bovem	boves
Voc.	bos	boves
Abl.	bove	bobus *or* bubus

senex, *old man.*

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	senex	senes
Gen.	senis	senum
Dat.	seni	senibus
Acc.	senem	senes
Voc.	senex	senes
Abl.	sene	senibus

	respublica (f.), *republic.*	**iusiurandum** (n.), *oath.*	**Iupiter** (m.), *Jupiter.*
	SING.	SING.	SING.
Nom.	respublica	iusiurandum	Iupiter
Gen.	reipublicae	iurisiurandi	Iovis
Dat.	reipublicae	iuriiurando	Iovi
Acc.	rempublicam	iusiurandum	Iovem
Voc.	respublica	iusiurandum	Iupiter
Abl.	republica	iureiurando	Iove

	iter (n.), *journey.*		**caro** (f.), *flesh.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	iter	itinera	caro	carnes
Gen.	itineris	itinerum	carnis	carnium
Dat.	itineri	itineribus	carni	carnibus
Acc.	iter	itinera	carnem	carnes
Voc.	iter	itinera	caro	carnes
Abl.	itinere	itineribus	carne	carnibus

os (n.), *bone.*

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	os	ossa
Gen.	ossis	ossium
Dat.	ossi	ossibus
Acc.	os	ossa
Voc.	os	ossa
Abl.	osse	ossibus

343.

Vocabulary 32.

aestas, aestatis (f.), *summer.*
attingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, *to touch, border on.*
coepi, coepisse (defective v.), *I began.*
concilio, -are, -avi, -atum, *to bring together, win, gain.*
conficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *to accomplish, finish.*
confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum, *establish, confirm, declare.*
conor, -ari, -atus sum, *to try, attempt, strive.*
custos, -odis (m.), *guard, sentry.*
deficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *fail, fall away from.*
deligo, -ere, -legi, -lectum, *to choose, select.*
dispono, -ere, -posui, -positum, *to place, station.*
ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, savage.*
idoneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling.*
mos, moris (m.), *custom, habit.*
Nervii, -orum (m. pl.), *the Nervii (a Gallic tribe).*
officium, -i (n.), *duty, allegiance.*
ordo, ordinis (m.), *rank.*
perfacilis, -e, *very easy.*
perturbo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to confuse, disorder.*
reperio, -iri, repperi, repertum, *to find, discover.*
revertor, -ti, reversus sum, *to return.*
trado, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *to give up, deliver up, surrender.*

344.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legatos miserunt.
2. Ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt.
3. Te invito, hoc facere nolo.
4. Eo opere perfecto, praesidio disponit.
5. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt.
6. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit.
7. Audito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fuga sibi praesidium posuerunt.
8. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit.
9. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant.
10. Caesar equitatu praemisso, subsequebatur omnibus copiis.
11. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum quaeret, sic reperiebat; eos esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; confirmare sese neque legatos missuros, neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.
12. (a) Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse sua civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; (b) non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; (c) se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. (d) Hac oratione adducti, inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos, totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

345.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The brother of the king will have many soldiers in the city.
2. Let us give money to the king.
3. Four legions were captured by the enemy in one day.
4. He said that many men had come to Rome.
5. He sent a man that he might see the enemy.
6. After the leader was seized,[1] they killed many soldiers.
7. Hear this speech of Divitiacus and inquire the cause of it.
8. The soldiers did not believe that their leader was dead.
9. Having taken the town by storm, they killed all the inhabitants.
10. Having heard these things, he led his army to the bank of the river.
11. The Gauls having been conquered, Caesar returned to the province.
12. At sunrise our men crossed the river and bravely attacked the camp of the enemy.
13. Many soldiers will assemble from the Helvetians.
14. Caesar had many guards with him.
15. The soldiers strove to cross the Rhone.
16. Let us cross the river.

1 Use Ablative Absolute construction.

LESSON XXXV.

GERUND, GERUNDIVE AND SUPINE.

STEMS, ACCENTUATION, SYLLABLES.

346.

The Gerund.

(1) The Gerund of any verb is formed by dropping the final *-s* of the *present participle* of that verb and adding the endings:

Gen.	-di
Dat.	-do
Acc.	-dum
Abl.	-do

(2) The Gerund is a *verbal noun*, is used in the singular only, and is declined like a neuter noun of the *Second Declension* (without *nom.* or *voc.*)

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar finem *loquendi* facit (B. G., I, 46).
   Caesar makes an end *of speaking.*
2. Hostibus *pugnandi* potestatem fecit (B. G., I, 50).
   He gave the enemy a chance *of fighting.*

347.

The Gerundive.

The Gerundive is a *verbal adjective.* It is formed by dropping the final *-s* of the *present participle* and adding the endings: *-dus, -da, -dum,* etc., the *Gerund* being declined throughout like *bonus, -a, -um.*

348.

Use of Gerund and Gerundive.

RULE 51.—The Genitive of the Gerund or the Gerundive is used after nouns and adjectives.

RULE 52.—The Dative of the Gerund or the Gerundive is sometimes used after adjectives that take the Dative.

as: *idoneus*, *utilis*, etc.

RULE 53.—The Accusative of the Gerund and the Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad* to denote purpose.

Also, more rarely, after *inter*, *ob*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. Consilium belluin *gerendi* (Gerund) habet; or,
   Consilium *belli gerendi* (Gerundive) habet.
   He has a plan *of waging* war.

2. Quae *ad effeminandos animos* pertinent.
   Which tend *to weaken their minds.*

3. *Ad eas res conficiendas* Orgetorix deligitur.
   Orgetorix is chosen *to arrange these matters.*

Observe that the Gerund is used *alone;* while the Gerundive is always used *with some noun*, the noun and the Gerundive being in the same case.

349.

The Supine.

RULE 54.—The Supine (ending in *-um*) is used, after a verb expressing motion, to express purpose.

EXAMPLE.

Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt *rogatum* auxilium.
They sent ambassadors to Caesar *to ask* aid.

350.

Stems.

Stems of nouns of first, second, fourth and fifth declensions have the form of the *ablative singular;* thus, the stem of *nauta* (1) is *nauta;* of *templum* (2), *templo;* of *senatus* (3), *senatu;* of *dies* (4), *die*, etc.

Stems of third declension nouns are found by dropping the final *-is* of the *genitive singular*, as in *miles*, gen. *milit-is*, stem *milit; lapis*, gen. *lapid-is*, stem *lapid.*

But in the following, called *i-stem nouns*, the stem has the form of the *dative singular:*

(1) Nouns ending (in the nominative singular) in *-es* or *-is*, which form the genitive without increasing the number of syllables; as, *civis*, gen. *civis*, stem *civi; nubes*, gen. *nubis*, stem *nubi.*

(2) Nouns ending in *-s* or *-x*, preceded by a consonant; as, *mons*, gen. *montis*, stem *monti; ars*, gen. *artis*, stem *arti.*

(3) Neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al* or *-ar;* as, *mare*, stem *mari*; *animal*, stem *animali*; *calcar*, stem *calcari*.

Stems of *adjectives* follow the rules given for *nouns*.

351.

Accentuation.

1. Words of *two syllables* are always accented on the *first syllable;* as, *con'sul*.

2. Words of *more than two syllables* are accented:

(1) On the *penult* when the penult is *long;* as, *ama'vit*.

(2) On the *antepenult* when the penult is *short;* as *mi'lites*.

The accented syllable is that on which the greatest emphasis is placed.

The *ultima* is the last syllable of a word.

The *penult* is the syllable next to the last.

The *antepenult* is the syllable before the penult.

352.

Syllables.

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

NOTE.—*In dividing words into syllables*, add to each vowel or diphthong as many of the preceding consonants as can be pronounced with it. The parts of compound words must be separated; as, *ab-sum*, etc.

353.

Vocabulary 33.

ago, -ere, egi, actum, *to do, perform.*

auxilium, -i (n.), *help, aid.*

comitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, *to engage in, begin.*

comperio, -ire, -peri, compertum, *to find out, discover.*

difficultas, -atis (f.), *difficulty.*

facultas, -atis (f.), *opportunity, facility.*

incito, -are, -avi, -atum, *to incite, excite.*

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *to speak.*

necessarius, -a, -um, *necessary.*

populor, -ari, -atus sum, *to devastate, lay waste.*

rogo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to ask, ask for.*

signum, -i (n.), *signal.*

succido, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *to cut down.*

supra, *above, before.*

sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *to sustain, withstand.*

usus, -us (m.), *use.*

ut (with indicative), *so, as.*

vinculum (vinclum), -i (n.), *chain*; ex vinclis, *in chains.*

354.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Coniurandi hae sunt causae.
2. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.[1]
3. Proelii committendi signum dedit.
4. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, milites hortatus est, ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinerent.
5. Hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit.
6. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur.
7. Aedui cum se ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.
8. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant.
9. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata.
10. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere coegerunt.
11. Die constituta causa dictionis,[2] Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coegit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret,[3] se eripuit.
12. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.[4]

---

1 erant agenda, *had to be done.*
2 causa dictionis, *for pleading the case.*
3 ne causam diceret, *from pleading his case.*
4 quin . . . consciverit, *that he committed suicide.*

355.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. We think that he will come.
2. He says that he will come.
3. He said that these things would be a care to him.
4. They are in another part of the city.
5. This house is larger than that.
6. Which of the mountains is the highest?
7. He was absent for four days.
8. They were unwilling to go across the river.
9. I shall go into that place if your brother does not come.
10. They say that these are the causes of conspiring.
11. Caesar made an end of speaking.
12. He gave the enemy an opportunity for fighting.
13. Night made an end of the fighting.
14. They have great hope of seeing the town.

LESSON XXXVI.

REVIEW.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

356.

Review the *two ways* of forming adverbs from adjectives.

357.

Write the comparison of *nobilis*, *facilis*, *utilis*, *celer*, *pulcher*, *longus*, *egens*, *sanus*.

Form an adverb from each of the above adjectives and write the comparison of each adverb thus formed.

358.

(a) Compare: *bonus*, *malus*, *parvus*, *magnus*, *multus*, *nequam*, *vetus*, *senex*, *iuvenis*.

(b) Compare: *diu*, *satis*, *bene*, *magis*, *multo*, *parum*, *magis*.

359.

Vocabulary 34.

ad (*with numerals*), *about.*

adscisco, -ere, -scivi, -scitum, *to attach.*

cibaria, -orum (n. pl.), *provisions*;
molita cibaria, *ground corn.*

defendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *to defend.*

effero, -ferre, extuli, elatum, *to carry out or away, bring out.*

exeo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *to go out.*

exuro, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *to burn up.*

gens, gentis (f.), *a tribe, clan, nation.*

inopia, -ae (f.), *want, need, scarcity.*

mors, mortis (f.), *death.*

pecunia, -ae (f.), *money.*

polliceor, -eri, pollicitus sum, *to promise.*

porto, -are, -avi, -atum, *to carry.*

praeterquam, *except.*

prohibeo, -ere, -hibui, -hibitum, *to prevent, keep from.*

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

reditio, -onis (f.), *return, returning.*

socius, -i (m.), *ally.*

tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum, *to take away, remove.*

utor, uti, usus sum, *to use, adopt.*

360.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Brevi tempore milites fortes magnum Helvetiorum oppidum ceperunt.

2. Belgae cum Germanis multos annos bellum gerebant.

3. Hostes, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum nostrum prohibere conabantur.

4. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad Caesarem miserunt.

5. Mons quem Caesar a militibus occupari voluit ab hostibus tenetur.

6. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et ad Genavam pervenit.

7. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt qui dicerent sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere.

8. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.

9. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt.

10. Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent.[1]

11. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti[2], eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis[3] proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant,[4] receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

---

1 trium . . . iubent, *they order every man to take from home three months' supply of ground corn for his own use.*

2 uti, ut, *that.*

3 una cum iis, *along with them.*

4 oppugnarant = oppugnaverant.

361.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Caesar promised to send soldiers to the city.
2. The Germans who dwell across the Rhine will not send hostages.
3. Ambassadors will be sent by the Gauls.
4. These things will be done quickly by Caesar.
5. This man is braver than the son of the great king.
6. The queen's daughter is loved by all the citizens.
7. Caesar was called a friend of the people.
8. Caesar was a better general than Cicero.
9. Would that I might see all my friends.
10. He came to Rome that he might hear Cicero the orator.
11. Romulus was the first king of Rome.
12. Many states made war on the Roman people.
13. We shall invite men of all nations to this city.
14. A small city must be built for this tribe.
15. Part of the territory was granted to the enemy after peace had been made.
16. We have given money to the leader.
17. The Roman army will conquer the enemy.
18. The territories of the Sequani will be defended.

LESSON XXXVII.

REVIEW.

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES. NUMERALS.

362.

Review Sections 143, 144 and 150–152 inc.; 213–222 inc.: 238 (3); 252–255 inc.

363.

Write all the infinitives and participles of *mitto*, *tubeo*, *vinco*, *scribo* and *potior*, with the meaning of each.

364.

The *Infinitive* may be used—

(1) *As the predicate* of the principal clause in Indirect Discourse, as:

Dicit se venturum esse.
He says that he will come.

(2) *To complete the meaning* of certain verbs (*possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, etc.), as:

Oppidum expugnare non potuit.
He was not able to capture the town.

(3) *As the subject* of a verb, as:

Hoc facere difficile est.
To do this is difficult.

365.

Review Questions.

(1) Divide the following words into syllables and accent each word: *miserunt*, *mittere*, *abest*, *flumen*, *longissimus*, *corpore*, *gaudium*, *ducebat*, *duceret*, *miserabilis*, *amatus*, *habetne*, *laudaverunt*.

(2) Write the genitive singular of *vir*, *res*, *mos*, *mors*, *pes*, *pars*, *mare*, *animal*, *locus*, *servus*, *manus*, *lacus*.

(3) Give the stem of each word in question (2).

(4) Decline (a) *fortis homo*, (b) *audax vir*, (c) *magnum mare*.

(5) Decline (a) *vis*, (b) *plus*, (c) the personal pronoun of the first person.

(6) Form and compare the adverb from *bonus*, *sanus*, *turpis*, *gravis*, *audax*, *facilis*, *fortis*, *acer*, *cupidus*, *nobilis*.

(7) Accent *obses*, *indicium*, *temporis*, *petebat*, *coegerunt*, and give the rule for each accent.

(8) Give the gender (with rule) of following: *Agricola*, *via*, *filius*, *oppidum*, *mare*, *Aprilis* (April), *res*, *flumen*, *pirus* (pear-tree), *frater*.

366.

Vocabulary 35.

accedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *to approach.*
adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *attack.*
arcesso, -ere, -sivi, -situm, *to summon, send for.*
conferro, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to collect*;
se conferre, *to betake one's self, take refuge in.*
eruptio, -onis (f.), *a sally, sortie.*
Hispania, -ae (f.), *Spain.*
incolumis, -e, *unhurt, safe.*
mos, moris (m.), *custom, habit.*
natio, -onis (f.), *nation, tribe.*
opinio, -onis (f.), *notion, impression, idea.*
perfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to carry through, spread among.*
peto, -ere, -petivi, -petitum, *to ask, seek, request.*
pono, -ere, -posui, -positum, *to place, put.*
repello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *to repel, repulse.*
repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
subito, *suddenly.*
tribunus, -i (m.), *a tribune* (*one of the six staff officers of a legion*).

367.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cissivellaunus[1] ad Cantium[2], quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, nuntios mittit atque his imperat uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra adoriantur. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce, suos incolumes reduxerunt.

2. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit, et exercitum in Bellovacos[3] ducit. Cum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

3. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatum[4] profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae; inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur; quorum adventu, magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur.

4. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas, pollicerentur.

5. Hostes in silvas se contulerant. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, subito in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas repulerunt.

6. Hoc proelio facto, Caesar, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, flumen exercitum traducit. Helvetii, repentino eius adventu commoti, legatos ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit qui bello Cassiano[5] dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

---

1 Cassivellaunus, proper name.
2 Cantium, -i, *Kent*.
3 Bellovacos, acc. of Bellovaci, -orum, *a Gallic tribe*.
4 Vocatum. gen. of Vocates, *a Gallic tribe*.
5 bello Cassiano, *in the war with Cassius*.

368.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He says that he will return to Rome.
2. He says that Caesar came to Rome.
3. He said that the enemy would never capture the city.
4. Let us hear the good consul.
5. They made Caesar ruler of all Gaul.
6. Is Britain a large island?
7. Claudius lived at Rome many years.
8. Who is able to take that large city?
9. The brave soldiers will conquer the enemy in many battles.
10. They had burned their houses and were awaiting his approach.
11. After the king's death they determined to wage war.
12. They learned that there was a very high mountain in that place.
13. He persuaded his brother to set out with him.
14. The tribunes of the soldiers will follow me with Caesar's consent.
15. The soldiers who had said these things were hoping to go away.
16. The whole army of the enemy must be seized by us.
17. I say that this brave man is my friend.
18. The Helvetians hoped to be able to master those of their neighbors who had not been received as allies.

LESSON XXXVIII.

REVIEW.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. PRONOUNS.

369.

Review Sections 211, 212; 228 to 231 inc.

370.

Write the declension of:

(a) *ea res.*
(b) *melior amicus.*
(c) *pater ipse.*
(d) *opus maximum.*

371.

Write the masculine of *aliquis;* the neuter of *idem;* the feminine of *qui.*

372.

Review Questions.

(1) Write the stems of *miles, senatus, corpus, virtus, dominus, res, nauta, regnum, lux, lacus.*

(2) Decline the neuter of the pronoun *hic* in both numbers.

(3) Decline *vir ipse.*

(4) Write the declension of *hic homo,* of *ea civitas,* of *exercitus major.*

(5) Write a synopsis of *exeo* in the third person singular, indicative and subjunctive.

373.

Vocabulary 36.

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present.*

attribuo, -ere, -ui, -utum, *to assign, allot.*

ceteri, -ae, -a (pl.), *the rest of, the rest, the others.*

cohors, cohortis (f.), *a cohort (tenth part of a legion).*

compleo, -ere, -plevi, -pletum, *to fill, fill up.*

concedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *grant, assign.*

interim (adv.), *meanwhile.*

Octodurus, -i (m.), *Octodurus (a town).*

quaero, -ere, -sivi, -situm, *to ask, inquire.*

vallis, vallis (f.), *a valley.*

374.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita,[1] omnes qui aderant auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent. Eius rei quae causa esset ex ipsis quaesiit.

2. Galba, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cum reliquis cohortibus in vico

1 habita, *having been delivered.*

qui appellatur Octodurus hiemare; qui vicus, positus in valle, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum munivit.

3. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio[1] triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum; sed in summo iugo[2] duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime[3] conscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri, et interea sarcinas[4] in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri iussit.

4. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie, reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange[5] facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.[6]

5. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore, pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta, gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt.

---

1 in colle medio, *half way up the hill.*
2 in summo iugo, *on the top.*
3 proxime, *lately.*
4 sarcinae (pl.), *packs or baggage.*
5 phalanx, -angis (f.), *a phalanx.*
6 rushed up against our first line.

375.

Exercise.

GIVE THE LATIN EXPRESSIONS FOR THE ITALICISED WORDS OF THE FOLLOWING:

1. The boy was punished *by his father.* 2. The king *whose brother* was slain. 3. He is stronger *than his friend.* 4. A few *of the soldiers* escaped. 5. *Having heard these things,* he prepared for war. 6. He held the royal power *many years.* 7. Caesar came *from Gaul to Rome.* 8. He went *from Rome to Capua.* 9. He sent the army *into the city.* 10. We came *at the same time.* 11. They encamped *a mile from the city.* 12. The girl is *like her mother.* 13. *We can seize* the town. 14. They went away *from the city.* 15. He *himself* came. 16. He praised *himself.* 17. The master *whom we obey.* 18. The Senate called *him friend.* 19. He came so late *that I did not see him.* 20. We wished *to go.* 21. He is *this boy's* brother. 22. He said that the soldiers *had come.* 23. *I am about to write* a letter. 24. Labienus, *having been conquered,* returned into Italy. 25. Labienus, *having conquered the Gauls,* returned into Italy. 26. I teach *myself.* 27. We have taught *ourselves the language.* 28. He sent soldiers as a *guard for the camp.* 29. Our men *took possession of the camp.* 30. He lived *at Rome many years.* 31. *When they had crossed* the river, they burned the bridge. 32. He came *with his legions.* 33. They fought *with great bravery.* 34. He fortified the town *with a wall.* 35. *In winter* the days are short. 36. He is *in Gaul.*

LESSON XXXIX.

REVIEW OF VERBS.

(Review Lessons XIII., XVIII. and XXII.)

376.

Review Questions.

1. Write a synopsis of *habeo* in the third person, singular, indicative and subjunctive active.

2. Conjugate *possum* in the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive, *eo* in the present and future indicative, *volo* in the present subjunctive.

3. Write all the infinitives, active and passive, of *persuadeo*, *fero*, *iacio*, *moveo*, *pono*, with the meaning of each.

4. Conjugate *libero* in the imperative, active. Where are the following forms made: *tenens*, *tenendus*, *flebat*, *fleret*, *ibant*, *scripsit*, *incendendi*, *persuaderet*, *posuerat*, *dabant*?

5. Give a synopsis of *moveo* in the third person plural, indicative and subjunctive.

6. Write the infinitives and participles of *convoco*, *peto*, *venio*, *maneo*, *iubeo*.

7. Inflect the present participles of *moneo* and *eo* in the masculine, singular and plural.

8. Define *enclitic*, *penult*, *deponent verb*, *impersonal verb*, *protasis*, *apodosis*, and illustrate each by an example.

9. Distinguish between *gerund* and *gerundive* as to meaning and as to use.

10. Write a synopsis of *arbitror* in third person singular, indicative and subjunctive.

377.

Review carefully the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

First Conjugation.

appello, appellare, appellavi, appellatum, *to call.*
arbitror, arbitrari, arbitratus sum, *think.*
comparo, comparare, comparavi, comparatum, *get ready.*
concilio, conciliare, conciliavi, conciliatum, *win over, gain.*
confirmo, confirmare, confirmavi, confirmatum, *strengthen.*
commeo, commeare, commeavi, commeatum, *visit.*
conor, conari, conatus sum, *attempt.*
convoco, convocare, convocavi, convocatum, *call together.*
cremo, cremare, cremavi, crematum, *burn.*
damno, damnare, damnavi, damnatum, *condemn.*
do, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*
effemino, effeminare, effeminavi, effeminatum, *weaken.*
enuntio, enuntiare, enuntiavi, enuntiatum, *report.*
incito, incitare, incitavi, incitatum, *excite, incite.*
occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatum, *occupy, seize.*
oppugno, oppugnare, oppugnavi, oppugnatum, *attack.*
paro, parare, paravi, paratum, *prepare.*
porto, portare, portavi, portatum, *carry.*
praesto, praestare, praestiti, praestitum, *excel.*
probo, probare, probavi, probatum, *prove.*
specto, spectare, spectavi, spectatum, *look at.*
spero, sperare, speravi, speratum, *hope.*
vagor, vagari, vagatus sum, *wander.*

Second Conjugation.

contineo, continere, continui, contentum, *bound.*
habeo, habere, habui, habitum, *have.*
iubeo, iubere, iussi, iussum, *order.*
maneo, manere, mansi, mansum, *remain.*
obtineo, obtinere, obtinui, obtentum, *hold.*
pateo, patere, patui, (no supine), *extend.*
permoveo, permovere, permovi, permotum, *influence.*
persuadeo, persuadere, persuasi, persuasum, *persuade.*
pertineo, pertinere, pertinui (no supine), *pertain to.*
polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, *to promise.*
prohibeo, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitum, *prevent.*
teneo, tenere, tenui, tentum, *hold, keep.*
video, videre, vidi, visum, *see.*

Third Conjugation.

accipio, accipere, accepi, acceptum, *receive.*
adduco, adducere, adduxi, adductum, *induce.*
adscisco, adsciscere, adscivi, adscitum, *attach.*
afficio, afficere, affeci, affectum, *affect.*
ago, agere, egi, actum, *do, act.*
attingo, attingere, attigi, attactum, *touch.*
capio, capere, cepi, captum, *take.*
coemo, coemere, coemi, coemptum, *buy.*
cogo, cogere, coegi, coactum, *compel.*
comburo, comburere, combussi, combustum, *burn up.*
conduco, conducere, conduxi, conductum, *bring together.*
conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum, *finish.*

conscisco, consciscere, conscivi, conscitum, *resolve.*
constituo, constituere, constitui, constitutum, *determine.*
contendo, contendere, contendi, contentum, *fight, hasten.*
deligo, deligere, delegi, delectum, *select, choose.*
dico, dicere, dixi, dictum, *say.*
divido, dividere, divisi, divisum, *divide.*
eripio, eripere, eripui, ereptum, *take from.*
exuro, exurere, exussi, exustum, *burn.*
facio, facere, feci, factum, *do, make.*
gero, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry on.*
incendo, incendere, incendi, incensum, *burn.*
incolo, incolere, incolui (no supine), *inhabit.*
induco, inducere, induxi, inductum, *induce.*
iacio, iacere, ieci, iactum, *throw.*
mitto, mittere, misi, missum, *send.*
morior, mori, mortuus sum, *die.*
patior, pati, passus sum, *allow, suffer.*
perficio, perficere, perfeci, perfectum, *complete.*
peto, petere, petivi, petitum, *ask, seek.*
praecedo, praecedere, praecessi, praecessum, *excel.*
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *set out.*
quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum, *ask, inquire.*
recipio, recipere, recepi, receptum, *receive.*
scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write.*
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow.*
suppeto, suppetere, suppetivi, suppetitum, *be on hand.*
suscipio, suscipere, suscepi, susceptum, *undertake.*
tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublatum, *take away, remove.*
utor, uti, usus sum, *use.*
vergo, vergere, —, —, *slope, incline.*

vinco, vincere, vici, victum, *conquer.*
vivo, vivere, vixi, victum, *live.*

Fourth Conjugation.

audio, audire, audivi, auditum, *hear.*
orior, oriri. ortus sum, *rise, arise.*
pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventum, *come to, arrive.*
potior, potiri, potitus sum, *gain, take possession of.*
venio, venire, veni, ventum, *come.*

Irregular Verbs.

differo, differe, distuli, dilatum, *differ.*
effero, effere, extuli, elatum, *carry away.*
exeo, exire, exivi *or* exii, exitum, *go out.*
fio, fieri, factus sum, *to be done, become.*
infero, inferre, intuli, illatum, *bring in.*
subeo, subire, subii, subitum, *undergo.*
transeo, transire, transii, transitum, *cross.*

378.

Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They say that Caesar is making a journey through the territory of the enemy.
2. If Caesar should send foward cavalry, the enemy would follow with all their forces.
3. Let us enlist 10,000 men for a guard to the camp.
4. They asked Caesar what he had learned from the captives.[1]
5. Let us send troops to the Aedui.
6. We are not able to enlist troops in Gaul.
7. We will send 10,000 men to Caesar.
8. The city cannot be defended from Caesar.
9. When they were prepared to set out they burned their towns.
10. Caesar thought that he ought not to do this.
11. The Romans will continually wage war with the Gauls.
12. The legions which Caesar had arranged in line of battle were very brave.
13. The attack of Caesar's legions will not be withstood by the enemy.
14. They say that our soldiers are hastening from the camp.
15. Order everyone to burn his grain.
16. We did not make a journey on that day.
17. Those who were sent by the Helvetians said that they had no way through the province.
18. Say that we shall send ambassadors to ask his consent.

1 captive=captivus, -i (m.)

19. The noblest men must be sent to say those things to Caesar.
20. If these men were noble they would be sent as ambassadors.
21. They were unwilling to go across the river.
22. He burned that town which he had taken.
23. I shall go into that place if your brother does not come.
24. We must have a supply of corn.
25. They think that they are prepared to do that which they have decided upon.
26. He has the greatest number possible.
27. We must seize the town.
28. He led the troops which he had collected to the river Rhone.
29. The way through the mountains was much easier.
30. The Belgians are nearest to the Germans and are continually waging war with them.

LESSON XL.

REVIEW.

USE OF CASES. DEFINITIONS.

The Nominative Case.

379.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

The *Predicate Nominative* is the case of a noun or pronoun used to complete the meaning of an intransitive (or passive or neuter) verb and referring to the *same person or thing as the subject.*

EXAMPLE.

Galba est *nauta.*
Galba is *a sailor.*

380.

APPOSITION.

A noun used to describe or limit another noun (or pronoun) and referring to the same person or thing, is in the *same case.*

The word in apposition is called an *appositive.*

EXAMPLE.

Galba, *nauta*, filiam habet.
Galba, *the sailor*, has a daughter.

The Genitive Case.

381.

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION.

The *Genitive Case* is used to denote the owner or author.

EXAMPLE.

Tullia est filia *Galbae.*
Tullia is the daughter *of Galba.*

382.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL.

The *Genitive* is used to denote the *material* of which something is made.

EXAMPLE.

Rex coronam *auri* habet.
The king has a crown *of gold.*

383.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

The *Partitive Genitive* denotes the *whole* of which a *part* is mentioned.

EXAMPLE.

Belgae unam partem *Galliae* incolunt.
The Belgians inhabit one part *of Gaul.*

The Dative Case.

384.

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

The *Dative* is used to denote the *indirect object* of a transitive verb.

EXAMPLE.

Librum *puero* dat.
He gives a book *to the boy.*

385.

DATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

Verbs meaning to *please*, *displease*, *obey*, *disobey*, *persuade*, etc., take an object in the Dative case instead of the Accusative.

EXAMPLE.

Castico persuasit.
He persuaded *Casticus.*

386.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

The *Dative* is sometimes used with *esse* to denote possession.

EXAMPLE.

Est *mihi* liber.
The book is mine.

387.

DATIVE OF AGENT.

The *Agent* with the Second or Passive Periphrastic is expressed by the Dative Case.

EXAMPLE.

Nobis faciendum est.
It must be done *by us.*

388.

DATIVE OF SERVICE.

The *Dative* is used to show the *purpose* of an action or *that for which something serves.*

EXAMPLE.

Milites *praesidio* oppido misit.
He sent soldiers *as a guard* for the town.

When used with another dative of the person or thing affected, as in example, it is called the *Double Dative.*

389.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

The *Dative* is used after certain adjectives to complete their meaning.

EXAMPLE.

Liber *puero* gratus est.
The book is pleasing *to the boy.*

The Accusative Case.

390.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

The *Accusative* is the case of the *direct object* of a transitive verb.

EXAMPLE.

Puer *librum* habet.
The boy has *a book*.

391.

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME.

The *Accusative* is used to denote *duration of time*.

EXAMPLE.

Duo annos aberat.
He was away for *two years*.

392.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE.

The *Accusative* is used to denote *extent of space*.

EXAMPLE.

Flumen *centum pedes* latum est.
The river is *one hundred feet* wide.

393.

SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

The *Subject of the infinitive* in Indirect Discourse is in the *Accusative Case.*

EXAMPLE.

Dicit *se* venturum esse.
He says *that he* will come.

394.

ACCUSATIVE OF END OF MOTION.

The place to which is denoted by the *Accusative* with *ad* or *in;* in *names of towns*, by the *Accusative without a preposition.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *In Galliam* venit.
   He came *to Gaul.*
2. *Romam* venit.
   He came *to Rome.*

395.

TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Verbs of *teaching* take two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing* taught.

EXAMPLE.

Eos historiam docuit.
He taught *them history.*

The Vocative Case.

396.

The *Vocative* is the *case of address.*

EXAMPLE.

Pro patria pugnate, *cives.*
Fight for your country, *citizens.*

The Ablative Case.

397.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

Place where is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in;* as: *in Gallia, in Gaul.*

398.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

Time when is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition, as: *hieme, in winter; eo tempore, at that time.*

399.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT.

The means or instrument with which something is done is expressed by the Ablative, without a preposition, as: Castra *vallo munivit,* he fortified the camp *with a wall.*

400.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

The Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *a* or *ab,* as: oppidum *a Caesare captum est,* the town was captured *by Caesar.*

401.

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

The Ablative is used to express that in respect to which something is or is done, as: Hi omnes *lingua et legibus* inter se differunt. These all differ from one another *in language and laws.*

402.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

The *Ablative*, with the preposition *cum* is used to express accompaniment, as: *cum exercitu* venit, he came *with the army.*

403.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

The *Ablative* after a comparative is used to express that with which something is compared, as: Germani *Gallis* fortiores fuerunt. The Germans were braver *than the Gauls.*

404.

ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

The Ablative with the preposition *cum* is used to express the manner of an action, as: *cum alacritate* has oppugnaverunt, they attacked the enemy *with alacrity.*

(NOTE.—*Cum* is sometimes omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective).

405.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

The Ablative sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition, is used to express the cause or reason for an action, as: Romani *laude* digni sunt, the Romans are worthy *of praise.*

406.

ABLATIVE AS OBJECT.

The deponents *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior* and *vescor* take an object in the *Ablative* instead of in the *Accusative*, as: *Eodem consilio* usi sunt. They adopted *the same plan.*

407.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

The *Ablative*, with or without a preposition, is used to denote *separation.*

(NOTE.—A preposition is regularly used where the verb begins with *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*).

EXAMPLES.

1. Flumen Gallos *a Belgis* dividit.
   A river separates the Gauls *from the Belgians.*
2. Patriam *metu* liberavit.
   He freed his country *from fear.*

408.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

A *noun or pronoun* in the *Ablative Case*, with a participle agreeing with it, is used to express the *time*, *cause* or *manner* of an action.

EXAMPLE.

Gallis superatis, Roman rediit.
The Gauls having been conquered, he returned to Rome.

409.

Review of Subjunctive

CONSTRUCTIONS, ETC., WITH EXAMPLES IN LATIN.

1. *Optative Subjunctive*, expressing a wish.

EXAMPLE.

Fortiter *pugnent.*
May they fight bravely.

2. *Hortatory Subjunctive*, expressing exhortation or a proposition.

EXAMPLE.

Bonum consulem *audiamus.*
Let us hear *the good consul.*

3. *Subjunctive of Purpose (final clause).*

EXAMPLE.

Venit *ut Romam videret.*
He came *that he might see Rome.*

4. *Subjunctive of Result* (*concessive clause*).

EXAMPLE.

Accidit *ut esset luna plena.*

It happened *that there was a full moon.*

5. *Temporal Clause*, expressing *time.*

EXAMPLE.

Cum Caesar in Gallia esset, Helvetios superavit.

When Caesar was in Gaul, he conquered the Helvetii.

6. *Causal Clause*, expressing the cause or reason for an action.

EXAMPLE.

Hoc dico *quod id credo.*

I say this *because I believe it.*

7. *Indirect Discourse* is indirect quotation and is used after verbs of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, etc.

EXAMPLE.

Dicit *se venturum esse.*

He says *that he will come.*

8. The *Subjunctive* is used in *dependent clauses* in Indirect Discourse.

EXAMPLE.

Dicit se venturum esse *cum possit.*

He says that he will come *when he can.*

9. A *reflexive pronoun* is one that refers to the same person or thing as the subject.

EXAMPLE.

Se laudat.

He praises *himself.*

10. A *deponent verb* is one that is *passive* in form and *active* in meaning.

EXAMPLE.

Provinciam occupare *conantur*.
They attempt to seize the province.

11. An *impersonal verb* is one that has no personal subject.

EXAMPLE.

Accidit ut esset luna plena.
It happened that there was a full moon.

12. Mention *one* kind of conditional sentence that requires the indicative and *one* kind that requires the subjunctive.

ANS.—A *more vivid future* condition requires the future indicative in both clauses.

EXAMPLE.

Si veniet, hostes *vincet*.
If he comes, he will conquer the enemy.

A *less vivid future* condition requires the subjunctive in both clauses.

EXAMPLE.

Si *veniat*, hostes *vincat*.
If he should come, he would conquer the enemy.

415.

Review Questions.

1. Define each of the following and give an example in Latin: (a) gerund, (b) gerundive, (c) enclitic, (d) cardinal number, (e) ordinal number, (f) apodosis, (g) protasis, (h) penult, (i) antepenult.

2. Explain the difference between *stem* and *ending*.

ANS.—The stem is the syllable or group of syllables which is common to a class of word formation. It is the part of the word to which the endings are added.

The ending is the syllable (or syllables) added to the stem of a word, to indicate the use of that word in a sentence.

3. What is the *root* of a verb?

The root is the ultimate (or simplest) part of a verb. In most verbs it may be found by dropping the final vowel of the stem.

EXAMPLE.

VERB.	STEM.	ROOT.
moneo.	*mone.*	*mon.*
audio.	*audi.*	*aud.*

4. (a) Explain the formation of each of the following nominatives; dux, princeps, custos, nubes; (b) give the stem of opus, pater, consul, animal.

5. Explain the case of the italicized word in the following sentences: (a) Dux erat fortior quam *miles*. (b) Dux erat fortior *milite*.

6. Define predicate adjective and give an example of one.

ANS.—A predicate adjective is one that *modifies the subject* and *completes the meaning of the predicate.*

EXAMPLE.

Miles est *fortis.*

The soldier is *brave.*

7. An *Indirect Question* is a clause beginning with an interrogative word and used as the object of a verb.

EXAMPLE.

Nescio *quis sit.*

I do not know *who he is.*

416.

Review Exercise.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Have you a large javelin?
2. We fought to free our country.
3. Many chiefs were killed in this fight.
4. Let us fortify this town with a high wall.
5. He informs me that the ambassador has departed.
6. Let us make this man our king.
7. The scout tells Caesar that the Gauls are coming.
8. We must lead the troops through the city.
9. (a) He was conquering; (b) They have been conquered; (c) he will go; (d) we prefer; (e) you have heard; (f) he will have been conquered; (g) he had gone; (h) at home; (i) from the city; (j) on the third day.
10. He said that he had sent a letter to Rome.
11. He says that Caesar will cross the Rhone.
12. The general sent him to take the town.
13. (a) With the leader; (b) the first war; (c) to have loved; (d) to be advised; (e) let him hear; (f) he had been advised; (g) he will be ruled; (h) about to hear; (i) hearing; (j) hear ye.
14. The Greeks are said to have been freed from slavery.

Latin Readings

[*From Regents' Examination Papers.*]

417.

Hannibal imperator factus est et omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit. Tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit.

Gens—nation; *Hispania*—Spain; *subigo*—subdue; *comparo*—fit out.

418.

Tum Caesar in dextro et sinistro cornu equites collocat, et militum animos paucis verbis ad pugnam incitat: "Milites, omnis spes civitatis Romanae in virtute nostra est; fortibus victoria est."

In dextro et sinistro cornu—on the right flank and on the left.

419.

Pyrrhus in Italiam venit et Laevinus consul contra eum missus est. Pugna commissa, Pyrrhus auxilio elephantorum vicit. Nox proelio finem dedit. Laevinus tamen per noctem fugit. Pyrrhus Romanos mille octogentos cepit eosque summo honore tractavit.

Pyrrhus—Pyrrhus, king of Epirus; *elephantus*—elephant; *tractavit*—treated.

420.

Anno quarto postquam in Italiam Hannibal venit, M. Claudius Marcellus consul contra Hannibalem bene pugnavit. Hannibal multas civitates Romanorum occupavit; quo tempore etiam rex Macedoniae Philippus ad eum legatos misit, promittens auxilia contra Romanos.

Promittens—promising.

421.

Apud Romanos Iuppiter fuit deorum et hominum pater. Iuno, uxor Iovis, regina fuit coeli. Minerva, filia Iovis, deo fuit sapientiae. Apollinem appellaverunt deum solis, Dianam deam lunae, Cererem deam frumenti. Mercurius deorum nuntius fuisse dicitur. In Graecia et in Italia dicunt multa templa fuisse Iovis.

Iuppiter—Jupiter; *Iuno*—Juno; *Apollo, -inis*—Apollo; *Ceres, Cereris*—Ceres; *Mĕrcurius*—Mercury.

422.

Anno urbis conditae sexcentesimo nonagesimo tertio C. Julius Caesar consul factus est. Decreta est ei Gallia et Illyricum cum legionibus decem. Is primo vicit Helvetios, qui nunc Sequani appellantur, deinde vincendo per bella gravissima usque ad Oceanum Britannicum processit.

Urbis conditae—of the founding of the city; *primo*—first; *deinde*—then; *usque*—even; *processit*—advanced.

423.

Anno quarto decimo postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, Scipio consul est factus et in Africam missus. Is in Africa contra Hannonem, ducem Afrorum, pugnat atque exercitum eius delet. Secundo proelio castra capit cum multis militibus.

Hanno, -onis, (m.)—Hanno, a Carthaginian commander; Afer, Afri, (m.)—an African.

424.

Commovit bellum urbi rex Tarquinius. In prima pugna Brutus consul, et Arruns, Tarquinii filius, sese invicem occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores recesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae quasi patrem luxerunt.

Sese invicem—each other; *matrona, -ae*, (f.)—matron; *lugeo*—mourn.

425.

Postquam Caesar equitatum praemisit, secutus est omnibus copiis. Equites nostri flumen transierunt atque cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Reliqui hostes, qui in silvas fugerant, in nostros milites impetum fecerunt.

Reliqui hostes—the rest of the enemy.

426.

Post hoc proelium Athenienses multas naves imperatori dederunt ut cum insulis quae barbaros iuverant bellum gereret. Cum populum harum insularum oratione reconciliare non posset, copias e navibus eduxit et eorum urbes expugnavit.

Atheniensis—an Athenian; *reconcilio*—win over.

427.

Quattuor dies Xerxes cum multis milibus hominum exspectavit; quinto die, cum Leonidas copias non abduxisset, proelium commisit. Sed magnus numerus Persarum aut vulneratus aut interfectus a Graecis cecidit; reliqui fugerunt.

Xerxes, -is—Xerxes, king of Persia; *Leonidas, -ae*, Leonidas, the Spartan commander at Thermopylae.

428.

Postquam omnes Belgarum copiae in unum locum venerunt, Caesar flumen, quod est in hostium finibus, exercitum transduxit atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi Caesar unam legionem et in altera parte fluminis duas legiones reliquit.

429.

Cum Xerxes in Europam maximis copiis transiisset, Leonidas cum septem milibus hominum missus est, ut Thermopylas occuparet. Ii vim hostium sustinere non potuerunt et eo loco omnes interierunt. Post hoc proelium Xerxes Athenas venit atque urbem delevit.

See Ex. 420, *notes*. *Thermopylae, -arum*—Thermopylae.

430.

Erat inter Graecos, qui urbem Troiam obsidebant, Ulixes, vir summae virtutis et prudentiae. Hic regnum insulae Ithacae obtinuerat et cum reliquis Graecis Troiam profectus

erat. Troia tandem capta, domum redire maturavit. De hoc reditu Homerus, maximus poeta Graecorum, scripsit.

Graecus—a Greek; *Troia, -ae*—Troy; *Ulixes, -is*—Ulysses, one of the Greek chiefs; *tandem*—at length; *Homerus, -i*—Homer, the Greek poet.

431.

Postero die Helvetii castra ex eo loco moverunt. Idem Caesar fecit, equitesque videre quam in partem hostes iter faciant iussit. Cum Romani hostes tria milia passuum secuti essent, proelium cum eis commiserunt; et pauci de nostris ceciderunt.

De nostris—of our men; *ceciderunt* from cado—fall.

432.

Athenienses bellum hostibus indixerunt[1]. Ad hoc bellum gerendum Alcibiades[2] dux delectus est atque duo collegae[3] ei dati sunt. Priusquam classis exiret, omnes Hermae[4] qui erant Athenis una nocte deiecti sunt[5].

1. *Indico*—declare; 2. *Alcibiades, -is*—Alcibiades, an Athenian commander; 3. *collega*—colleague; 4. *Hermae*—statues of Hermes (Mercury); 5. *deicio*—throw down.

433.

Hostes Regulum ducem, quem ceperant, Romam miserunt. ut a senatu pacem obtineret. Ille, cum venisset, dixit se non iam esse civem Romanum et senatui persuasit ne pacem faceret. Cum ad Africam rediit summa crudelitate interfectus est.

Regulus, -i—Regulus, a Roman general in the first Punic war; *crudelitas, -atis*—cruelty.

434.

Brutus et Cassius, interfectores Caesaris, ingens bellum moverunt. Erant enim per Macedoniam multi exercitus, quos occupaverant. Profecti sunt igitur contra eos Augustus et Antonius; remanserat enim ad defendendam Italiam Lepidus. Primo proelio victi sunt Antonius et Augustus; Cassius tamen, dux nobilitatis, periit.

Interfector, -is—assassin; *Antonius*—Antony.

435.

Eisdem temporibus Persarum rex, exercitu ex Asia in Europam traiecto[1], bellum inferre decrevit[2]. Pontem fecit in Histro[3] flumine, ut copias traduceret. Eius pontis custodes reliquit principes, quos secum ex Asia duxerat.

1. *Traicio*—transport; 2. *decerno*—determine; 3. *Hister*—the Danube.

436.

Labienus, ut erat ei praescriptum[1] a Caesare, proelio abstinebat. Per exploratores Caesar cognovit montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse. Eo die hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

1. *Praescribo*—direct.

437.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus est et quaesivit, "Cur me interficitis? Nam inermis sum neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam." Hostes autem responderunt, "Propter hoc te interficiemus, quod alios ad pugnam incitare soles."

Tubicen—trumpeter; *inermis*—unarmed; *tuba*—trumpet.

VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH

AND

ENGLISH-LATIN

VOCABULARY

LATIN—ENGLISH

A

a, ab, prep. w. abl., *from, by, on the side of.*

ab-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead away.*

abstineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *keep from, abstain.*

ab-sum, -esse, afui, *be away, be absent, be distant.*

ac. *See* atque.

accedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *go towards, approach, assault.*

accido, -cidere, -cidi, *happen.*

accipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum, *receive, accept.*

accurro, -currere, -cucurri and -curri, -cursum, *run to, hasten to.*

accuso, -are, -avi, -atum, *accuse, blame.*

acer, acris, acre, *sharp.*

acies, aciei, F., *line of battle.*

acriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards; near;* w. *numerals, about.*

ad-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead to, influence.*

ad-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go to.*

ad-fero, ad-ferre, attuli, allatum, *bring to, carry to.*

aditus, -us, M., *approach, access.*

ad-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *allow, give the reins to;* equo admisso, *with his horse at a gallop.*

ad-orior, -iri, -ortus sum, *attack.*

ad-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *follow, overtake, obtain.*

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui, *be present.*

ad-venio, -venire, -veni, ventum, *come to, arrive.*

adventus, -us, M., *arrival, approach.*

adversus and adversum, prep. w. acc., *towards, against.*

adverto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *turn towards.*

aedificium, -i., N., *building, edifice.*

aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum, *build.*

Aedui, -orum, M., pl., *the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*

aestas, -atis, F., *summer.*

aetas, -atis, F., age.

Afer, -Afri, M., *an African.*

Africa, -ae, F., *Africa.*
ager, agri, M., *field, land, territory.*
agger, aggeris, M., *mound.*
aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *go to, attack.*
agmen, agminis, N., *army on the march, column.*
ago, agere, egi, actum, *to act, do.*
aliquis, indef. pron., *some one, some, any one.*
alius, alia, aliud, *other, another.*
Allobroges, -um, M. pl., *a Gallic tribe.*
Alpes, Alpium, F. pl., *the Alps.*
alte, *highly.*
alter, altera, alterum, *one of two, the other.*
alter—alter, *the one—the other.*
altitudo, altitudinis, F., *height, depth.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
amicitia, -ae, F., *friendship.*
angustiae, -arum, F., pl., *narrow pass.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
animadverto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *notice.*
animal, animalis, N., *animal.*
animus, -i, M., *mind, soul, courage.*
annus, -i, M., *year.*
ante, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv., *before.*
antea, adv., *before, previously.*
antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient, old.*
Apollo, -inis, M., *Apollo, god of the sun.*
appello, -are, -avi, -atum, *address, name, call.*
apud, prep. w. acc., *at, near, in presence of, among.*
aqua, -ae, F., *water.*
Aquitani, -orum, M., pl., *the Aquitani, a Gallic tribe.*
Aquitania, -ae, F., *Aquitania, a part of Gaul.*
Arar, Araris, M., *the Arar, a river in Gaul.*
Ariovistus, -i, M., *Ariovistus, a German king.*
arma, -orum, N., pl., *arms, weapons.*
arx, arcis, F., *citadel, fortress.*
at, conj., *but.*
Athenae, -arum, F., pl., *Athens.*
Atheniensis, -e, adj., *Athenian.*
Athenienses, -ium, M., *the Athenians.*
atque, ac. conj., *and also, and, and even.*
attingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, *touch, border upon.*
auctoritas, -atis, F., *authority, influence.*
audacter, adv., *boldly.*
audax, *bold, daring.*
audeo, audere, ausus sum, *dare, venture.*
audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *hear.*
augeo, augere, auxi, auctum, *increase.*
aureus, -a, -um, *golden.*
aurum, -i, N., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or;* aut—aut, *either —or.*
autem, conj., *but, moreover.*

auxilium, -i, N., *help, aid;* pl., *auxiliaries.*
aversus, -a, -um, *turned away.*
a-verto, -vertere, -verti, versum, *turn away, avert.*
avus, -i, M., *grandfather.*

B

barbarus, -a, -um, *savage, rude, barbarous.*
beatus, -a, -um, *happy.*
Belgae, -arum, M., pl., *the Belgians, a people of Gaul.*
bellicosus, -a, -um, *warlike.*
bello, -are, -avi, -atum, *carry on war.*
bellum, -i, N., *war.*
bene, adv., *well.*
beneficium, -i, N., *kindness, benefit.*
Bibracte, -is, N., *Bibracte, a town.*
biennium, -i, N., *two years.*
Boii, -orum, M., pl., *the Boii.*
bonus, -a, -um, *good.*
bos, bovis, M. and F., *ox, cow.*
brevis, breve, *short, brief.*
Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain.*
Britanni, -orum, M., *the Britons.*
Britannicus, -a, -um, *British.*

C

C -abb. of *Caius.*
cado, -ere, cecidi, casum, *fall, be killed.*
caedes, caedis, F., *slaughter.*
caedo, caedere, cecidi, caesum, *kill, slaughter.*
Caesar, Caesaris, M., *Caesar.*
calamitas, -atis, F., *calamity, disaster.*
campus, -i, M., *plain, field.*
capio, capere, cepi, captum, *take, capture.*
captivus, -i, M., *a captive, a prisoner.*
caput, capitis, N., *head.*
carrus, -i, M., *cart, wagon.*
carus, -a, -um, *dear, beloved.*
Casticus, -i, M., *Casticus.*
castra, -orum, N., pl., *camp.*
causa, -ae, F., *cause, reason, motive.*
celer, celeris, celere, *swift, speedy.*
celeriter, adv., *swiftly, quickly, immediately.*
census, -us, M., *census, enumeration.*
centum, num. adj., *hundred.*
centurio, -onis, M., *centurion.*
Ceres, Cereris, F., *Ceres.*
certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure.*
ceteri, -ae, -a, adj. pl., *the rest.*
cibus, -i, M., *food.*
cingo, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, *surround, encircle.*
circiter, adv., *about, near.*
circum, prep. w. acc., *around.*
circum-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *surround.*
citerior, citerius, *hither.*
citra, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*
civilis, -e, adj., *civil.*
civis, civis, M. and F., *citizen.*
civitas, -atis, F., *a state.*
clarus, -a, -um, *celebrated, famous.*

classis, -is, F., *fleet.*
claudo, claudere, clausi, clausum, *close, shut;* agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear.*
cliens, clientis, M., *client, vassal, retainer.*
coelum, -i, N., *heaven.*
coemo, -emere, -emi, -emptum, *purchase, buy up.*
coepi, coepisse, *begin.*
cognosco, -gnoscere, -gnovi, -gnitum, *find out, ascertain, learn.*
cogo, cogere, coegi, coactum, *collect, compel.*
cohors, cohortis, F., *cohort, the tenth part of a legion.*
collega, -ae, M., *colleague.*
colloco, *see* conloco.
collis, collis, M., *a hill.*
comburo, -burere, -bussi, -bustum, *burn up.*
commeatus, -us, M., *supplies, provisions.*
com-memoro, -are, -avi, -atum, *call to mind, relate.*
com-meo, -are, -avi, -atum, *resort, to visit.*
com-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *join, begin.*
com-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum, *move, excite, disturb, arouse.*
communis, commune, *common.*
com-paro, -are, -avi, -atum, *make ready.*
com-porto, -are, -avi, -atum, *bring together, collect.*
conatus, -us, M., *an attempt.*
con-cedo, cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *grant, concede.*
concilio, -are, -avi, -atum, *bring together, conciliate.*
concilium, -i, N., *council, assembly.*
condicio, -onis, F., *condition.*
condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *found, build;* ab urbe condita, *from the founding of the city.*
con-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead together, collect.*
con-fero, -fere, contuli, collatum, *bring together, collect.*
conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *accomplish, finish.*
con-firmo, -are, -avi, -atum, *establish, confirm.*
con-iicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectum, *hurl.*
coniunx, -ugis, M. and F., *husband, wife.*
coniuratio, coniurationis, F., *conspiracy.*
con-iuro, -are, -avi, -atum, *swear together, conspire.*
con-loco, -are, -avi, -atum, *put, place.*
conor, -ari, -atus sum, *attempt, try.*
conscius, -a, -um, *conscious.*
consensus, -us, M., *consent.*
con-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *follow after, follow.*
Considius, -i, M., *Considius.*
con-sideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum, *encamp.*
consilium, i, N., *counsel, plan.*
con-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *take a stand, halt.*

conspectus, -us, M., *sight, view.*
constituo, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *resolve, determine.*
con-suesco, con-suescere, con-suevi, con-suetum, *be accustomed.*
consuetudo, -inis, F., *tradition, usage.*
consul, consulis, M., *consul.*
con-sumo, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, *consume, destroy.*
con-temno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum, *despise.*
con-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, tentum, *hasten, contend, fight.*
contineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *hem in, bound.*
continenter, adv., *contiually.*
contra, prep. w. acc., *against.*
contumelia, -ae, F., *insult, disgrace.*
con-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *come together, assemble.*
con-voco, -are, -avi, -atum, *call together, summon.*
copia, -ae, F., *plenty, supply;* pl., *forces, troops.*
Corinthus, -i, F., *Corinth.*
corpus, corporis, N., *body.*
cornu, -us, N., *horn;* (mil. term), *wing, flank.*
cottidie, adv., *daily.*
cremo, -are, -avi, -atum, *burn.*
creo, -are, -avi, -atum, *elect, choose.*
crudelis, -e, *cruel.*
crudelitas, -atis, F., *cruelty.*
cultus, -us, M., *culture, civilization.*
cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
cum, adv., *when, as;* conj., *since, although.*
cupiditas, -atis, F., *desire, wish.*
cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous.*
cupio, cupere, cupivi *or* cupii, cupitum, *desire.*
cur, interrog. adv., *why?*
cura, -ae, F., *care.*
curo, -are, -avi, -atum, *care for.*
custos, custodis, M., *guard, watch.*

D

damno, -are, -avi, -atum, *condemn.*
de, prep. w. abl., *down from, from, about, concerning.*
dea, -ae, F., *goddess.*
debeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *owe.*
de-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *go away, depart.*
decem, *ten.*
decerno, -ere, -crevi, -cretum, *decree, order, assign to.*
decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
deditio, -onis, F., *surrender.*
dedo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *to surrender, yield.*
de-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead down or away.*
defendo, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum, *defend.*
de-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *give, grant.*
deinde, adv., *then.*
deiicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectum, *cast down, disappoint.*

deleo, delere, delevi, deletum, *destroy.*
de-libero, -are, -avi, -atum, *deliberate.*
deligo, -ligere, -legi, -lectum, *select, choose.*
de-monstro, -are, -avi, -atum, *point out, show.*
denique, adv., *at last, finally.*
deripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *plunder.*
de-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, *descend.*
de-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *describe.*
de-sum, de-esse, de-fui, *be wanting.*
deus, -i, M., *god.*
dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*
dicio, dicionis, F., *dominion, power.*
dico, dicere, dixi, dictum, *say, speak, appoint;* causam dicere, *to plead one's cause.*
dies, diei, M., *day.*
differo, differe, distuli, dilatum, *put off.*
difficilis, -e, *difficult.*
dignitas, -atis, F., *dignity, rank.*
dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.*
di-mico, -are, avi, -atum, *fight, contend.*
di-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *dismiss, send away.*
dis-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *go away, depart.*
diu, adv., *a long time.*
dives, gen. divitis, adj., *rich.*
Divico, -onis, M., *Divico.*
divido, -videre, -visi, -visum, *divide, separate.*
Divitiacus, -i, M., *Divitiacus.*
divitiae, -arum, F., pl., *riches, wealth.*
do, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*
doceo, docere, docui, doctum, *teach.*
dolor, doloris, M., *grief, sorrow, trouble.*
dolus, -i, M., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.*
domus, -us, F., *house;* domi, *at home;* domum, *home, to one's home.*
dubitatio, -onis, F., *doubt, hesitation.*
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*
ducenti, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*
duco, ducere, duxi, ductum, *lead, draw, put off.*
dulcis, dulce, *sweet, pleasant.*
dum, conj., *while, until.*
Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, M., *Dumnorix.*
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*
duodecim, adj. indecl., *twelve.*
duodecimus, -a, -um, *twelfth.*
dux, ducis, M., *commander, general.*

E

e-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth.*
effemino, -are, -avi, -atum, *enervate, weaken.*
efficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *effect, accomplish.*
egens, adj., *needy.*

ego, pers. pron., *I.*
egredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *go out, depart.*
elephantus, -i, M., *elephant.*
emo, emere, emi, emptum, *buy.*
enim, conj., *for.*
e-nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *report.*
eo, ire, ivi, itum, *go.*
eo, adv., *to that place, thither, there.*
eodem, adv., *to the same place, in the same place.*
eques, equitis, M., *horseman, trooper;* pl., *cavalry.*
equester, -tris, -tre, *of horsemen, of cavalry.*
equitatus, -us, M., *cavalry.*
equus, -i, M., *horse.*
eripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *take from.*
et, conj., *and;* et—et, *both—and.*
etiam, conj., *and also, also, even.*
et-si, conj., *even if, although.*
Europa, -ae, F., *Europe.*
e-vado, -vadere, -vasi, -vasum, *escape, get away.*
e-verto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *turn out, overturn, destroy.*
ex, e, prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*
exemplum, -i, N., *example.*
ex-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go out, go forth.*
exercitus, -us, M., *army.*
existimo, -are, -avi, -atum, *think, suppose.*
expeditus, -a, -um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
ex-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *expel, drive out.*
explorator, -oris, M., *spy, scout.*
ex-pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *take by assault, storm, capture.*
ex-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *follow out, enforce.*
ex-specto, -are, -avi, -atum, *expect, wait for.*
extra, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond.*
extremus, -a, -um, *furthermost, most, distant, extreme.*
ex-uro, -urere, -ussi, -ustum, *burn up.*

F

fabula, -ae, F., *story, fable.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
facilis, facile, *easy.*
facio, facere, feci, factum, *do, make.*
factum, -i, N., *deed, act.*
facultas, -atis, F., *ability, opportunity.*
familia, -ae, F., *family, clan.*
faveo, favere, favi, fautum, *favor.*
feliciter, adv., *happy, successfully.*
felix, gen. felicis, adj., *happy fortunate.*
femina, -ae, f., *female, woman.*
fere, adv., *almost, nearly.*
fero, ferre, tuli, latum, *bear, bring, carry, endure.*

ferrum, -i, N., *iron; sword.*
ferus, -a, -um, *wild, uncultivated.*
fides, fidei, F., *faith, confidence. protection.*
filia, -ae, F., *daughter.*
filius, -i, M., *son.*
finio, finire, finivi, finitum, *end, finish.*
finis, finis, M., *end, limit, boundary;* pl., *territory.*
finitimus, -a, -um, *neighbor;* finitimi, -orum, M., pl., *neighbors.*
fio, fieri, factus sum, *be made, become, occur, happen.*
flagito, -are, -avi, -atum, *demand*
fleo, flere, flevi, fletum, *weep.*
flens, gen. flentis, *weeping.*
flos, floris, M., *flower.*
flumen, fluminis, N., *river.*
fluo, fluere, fluxi, fluxum, *flow.*
fodio, fodere, fodi, fossum, *dig.*
forte, adv., *accidentally, by chance.*
fortis, forte, *brave, courageous.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
fortuna, -ae, F., *fortune.*
forum, -i, N., *market-place; forum.*
fossa, -ae, F., *ditch, treuch.*
frater, fratris, M., *brother.*
frigus, frigoris, N., *cold, frost.*
frumentarius, -a, -um, *of corn;* res frumentaria, *supplies.*
frumentum, -i, N., *corn, grain.*
fruor, frui, fructus sum, *enjoy.*
fuga, -ae, F., flight.
fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum, *flee, escape.*
fugo, -are, -avi, -atum, *put to flight, rout.*
fungor, fungi, functus sum, *perform.*

G

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul;* Gallia ulterior, *farther Gaul;* Gallia citerior, *hither Gaul.*
Gallicus, -a, um, *Gallic.*
Gallus, -i, M., *a Gaul.*
Garumna, -ae, F., *the Garumna, a river of Gaul, the modern Garonne.*
gener, generi, M., *son-in-law.*
Geneva, -ae, F., *Geneva.*
gens, gentis, F., *nation, tribe.*
genus, generis, N., *kind, race.*
Germani, -orum, M. pl., *the Germans.*
gero, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry on, wage.*
gladius, -i, M., *sword.*
gloria, -ae, F., *glory, renown.*
glorior, -ari, -atus sum, *boast, glory.*
Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece.*
Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek.*
gratia, -ae, F., *favor, influence, popularity;* pl., *thanks.*
gravis, -e, *heavy, burdensome, severe.*
graviter, adv., *grievously, severely.*

H

habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *have, hold.*
Hannibal, -is, M., *Hannibal.*

hasta, -ae, F., *spear.*
Helvetii, -orum, M. pl., *the Helvetians.*
hiberna, -orum, N. pl., *winter-quarters.*
Hibernia, -ae, F., *Hibernia, Ireland.*
hic, haec, hoc, *this.*
hic, adv., *here, in this place.*
hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum, *to winter.*
hinc, adv., *hence, from this place.*
Hispania, -ae, F., *Spain.*
hodie, adv., *to-day.*
Homerus, -i, M., *Homer.*
homo, hominis, M., *man.*
honor, honoris. M., *honor.*
hora, -ae, F., *hour.*
hortor, -ari, -atus sum, *exhort, urge.*
hostis, hostis, M., *enemy, public enemy.*
humanitas, -atis, F., *refinement.*

I

iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum, *throw.*
iam, adv., *already, now.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
idem, eadem, idem, *the same.*
idoneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
igitur, conj., *therefore.*
ignis, -is, M., *fire.*
ille, illa, illud, *that.*
Illyricum, -i, N., *Illyricum.*
immortalis, immortale, *immortal.*
impedimentum, -i, N., *hindrance;* pl., *baggage (of an army).*
impendeo, -pendere, no perf. nor sup., *overhang.*
imperator, -oris, M., *commander-in-chief, general.*
imperitus, -a, -um, *unskilled, inexperienced.*
imperium, -i, N., *command, supreme power.*
impero, -are, -avi, -atum, *give orders, order; command, rule (with dat.)*
impetus, -us, M., *attack, assault.*
imploro, -are, -avi, -atum, *entreat, implore.*
impono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, *place upon; levy upon.*
importo, -are, -avi, -atum, *bring into, import.*
in, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against;* w. abl., *in, on, among.*
incendo, incendere, incendi, incensum, *set on fire, burn.*
in-cito, -are, -avi, -atum, *instigate, incite.*
in-colo, -colere, -colui, *inhabit, dwell.*
incolumis, -e, *unhurt, safe.*
incommodum, -i, *inconvenience, defeat.*
in-credibilis, -e, *incredible.*
inde, adv., *thence.*
in-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *declare.*
indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy.*
in-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead into, induce.*

inermis, -e, *unarmed.*
inferior, *lower.*
in-fero, in-ferre, in-tuli, in-latum, *bring into or upon, make upon.*
in-fluo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum, *flow into.*
ingens, *vast, enormous, huge.*
inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile;* as noun, *a personal enemy.*
initium, -i, N., *beginning.*
iniuria, -ae, F., *injury, wrong.*
inopia, -ae, F., *want, scarcity.*
insidiae, -arum, F. pl., *treachery, deceit.*
insignis, insigne, *remarkable, extraordinary.*
institutum, -i, N., *custom.*
in-struo, -struere, -struxi, -structum, *form, draw up.*
intellego, -legere, -lexi, -lectum, *understand, know.*
inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among.*
interfector, -oris, M., *assassin.*
interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *kill.*
internecio, -onis, F., *slaughter.*
inter-sum, -esse, -fui, *be between, intervene.*
inter-vallum, -i, N., *interval, distance.*
intro -are -avi, -atum, *enter.*
in-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *come upon, find.*
invidia -ae, F. *envy, hatred.*
invitus -a -um *unwilling;* se invito, *against his will.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self, himself, herself, itself.*
is, ea, id, *he, her, it; this, that;* eo die, *on that day.*
ita, adv., *so, thus.*
Italia, -ae, F., *Italy.*
ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore.*
item, adv., *in the same way, likewise.*
iter, itineris, N., *journey; march, road, route.*
iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum, *order.*
iudicium, -i, N., *trial.*
iudico, -are, -avi, -atum, *judge, think.*
iugum, -i, N., *yoke.*
iumentum, -i, N., *beast of burden, pack animal.*
Iuno, -onis, F., *Juno.*
Iupiter, Iovis, M., *Jupiter.*
Iura, -ae, M., *the Jura (mountains).*
ius, iuris, N., *right, law.*
iusiurandum, iurisiurandi, N., *oath.*
iustus, -a, -um, *just, right.*
iuvenis, -e, *young.*
iuvo, iuvare, iuvi, iutum, *help, aid.*

L

lacus, -us, M., *lake.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, happy.*
Laevinus, -i, M., *Laevinus, a Roman consul.*
lapis, lapidis, M., *stone.*
largitio, -onis, F., *liberality.*
late, adv., *widely, extensively.*

latitudo, -inis, F., *width, breadth.*
latro, latronis, M., *robber.*
latus, lateris, N., *side, flank.*
latus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*
legatio, -onis, F., *embassy.*
legatus, -i, M., *ambassador, envoy, lieutenant.*
legio, legionis, F., *legion.*
lego, legere, legi, lectum, *choose.*
Lemannus, -i, M., *Lake Leman or Geneva.*
lenitas, -atis, F., *smoothness.*
leo, leonis, M., *lion.*
lex, legis, F., *law.*
liber, libera, liberum, *free.*
liberalitas, -atis, F., *liberality, generosity.*
libere, adv., *freely, unreservedly.*
liberi, -orum, M. pl., *children.*
libero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to free, liberate.*
libertas, -atis, F., *freedom, liberty.*
licet, licere, licuit *or* licitum est, *is permitted, allowed.*
Lingones, -um, M. pl., *a people of Gaul.*
lingua, -ae, F., *language.*
Liscus, -i, M., *Liscus, a magistrate among the Aedui.*
littera, -ae, F., *letter of the alphabet;* pl., *letter, epistle.*
locus, -i, M., *place, region.*
longe, adv., *far, by far.*
longissime, adv., *very far.*
longitudo, -inis, F., *length.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
loquor, loqui, locutus sum, *speak, talk.*
luna, *the moon.*
lugeo, -ere, luxi, luctum, *mourn.*
lux, lucis, F., *light;* prima luce, *at daybreak.*

M

M., *abb. for Marcus.*
Macedonia, -ae, F., *Macedonia.*
magis, maxime, adv., *more, rather.*
magister, -tri, M., *master, chief, commander.*
magistratus, -us, M., *magistrate.*
magnitudo, -inis, F., *magnitude.*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large.*
maiestas, -atis, F., *majesty, dignity.*
maior, maius, *larger, greater;* maiores, -um, M. pl., *ancestors.*
male, adv., *badly.*
maleficium, -i, N., *mischief, damage.*
malo, malle, malui, *be more willing, prefer.*
malus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked.*
maneo, manere, mansi, mansum, *stay, remain.*
manus, -us, F., *hand.*
mare, maris, N., *sea.*
mater, matris, F., *mother.*
matrimonium, -i, N., *marriage;* in matrimonium dare, *to give in marriage.*

Matrona, -ae, M., *a river in Gaul.*
matrona, -ae, F., *matron.*
mature, adv., *early, soon.*
maturo, -are, -avi, -atum, *hasten, make haste.*
melior, melius, *better.*
memini, meminisse, *remember.*
memoria, -ae, F., *memory, remembrance.*
mens, mentis, F., *mind.*
mensis, mensis, M., *month.*
mercator, -oris, M., *trader, merchant.*
Mercurius, -i, M., *Mercury.*
mereo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *deserve.*
meritum, -i, *desert.*
Messala, -ae, M., *a Roman name.*
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
miles, militis, M., *soldier.*
militaris, -e, *military;* res militaris, *the art of war.*
mille, pl. milia, milium, *thousand.*
minime, adv., *least.*
minimus, -a, -um, *least.*
minor, minus, *smaller, less.*
minuo, minuere, minui, minutum, *diminish.*
minus, adv., *less.*
miror, -ari, -atus sum, *admire, wonder at.*
miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, miserable.*
mitto, mittere, misi, missum, *send.*
mollio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *soften, subdue.*
moneo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *remind, advise.*
mons, montis, M., *mountain, mount.*
monstro, -are, -avi, -atum, *show, point out.*
morior, mori *and* moriri, mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, -ari, -atus sum, *delay, hinder.*
mors, mortis, F., *death.*
mos, moris, M., *custom, manner; usage.*
moveo, movere, movi, motum, *move, excite;* castra movere, *to break camp.*
mulier, mulieris, F., *woman.*
multitudo, -inis, F., *multitude.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* pl., *many.*
munio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *fortify.*
munitio, -onis, F., *fortification.*
munus, muneris, N., *gift, reward.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*
nascor, nasci, natus sum, *be born.*
natio, -onis, F., *nation, tribe, clan.*
natu, abl. sing., M., *by birth.*
natura, -ae, F., *nature.*
navis, navis, F., *ship.*
ne, adv., *not;* conj., *that not; that.*
-ne, interrog. particle.
nec, *nor.*

neco, -are, -avi, -atum, *kill, put to death.*
nego, -are, -avi, -atum, *deny, refuse.*
nemo, neminis, M. *and* F., *no one, nobody.*
neque, nec, *and not.*
nescio, -ire, -ivi -itum, *not know.*
neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*
nihil, N.. *nothing.*
nihilominus, adv., *nevertheless.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*
nobilis, nobile, *noble.*
nobilitas, -atis, F., *nobility.*
nolo, nolle, nolui, *be unwilling.*
nomen, nominis, N., *name.*
non, adv., *not.*
nonagesimus, -a, -um, *ninetieth.*
nonaginta, *ninety.*
nonne, interr. particle, *not.*
nonus, -a, -um, *ninth.*
nos, pron., *we.*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours;* nostri, *our men.*
novem, *nine.*
novus, -a, -um, *new.*
nox, noctis, F., *night.*
nubes, -is, F., *cloud.*
nullus, -a, -um, *no, none.*
numerus, -i, M., *number.*
nunquam, adv., *never.*
nunc, *now.*
nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *announce, report.*
nuper, adv., *newly, recently.*
nuntius, -i, M., *messenger.*

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for.*
obaeratus, -i, M., *debtor.*
ob-eo, -ire, -ivi *and* -ii, -itum, *die.*
obiicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectum, *throw, throw up.*
obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, *forget.*
ob-ruo, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *overwhelm, cover.*
obsecro, -are, -avi, -atum, *beseech, implore.*
obses, obsidis, M., *hostage.*
ob-sideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, *besiege, lay siege to.*
obtineo, -tinere, -tinui, tentum, *hold, obtain, possess.*
occasus, -us, M., *going down;* solis occasu, *at sunset.*
occido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *kill, slay.*
occupo, -are, -avi, -atum, *seize, occupy.*
oceanus, -i, M., *ocean.*
Ocelum, -i, N., *a town in Gaul.*
octavus, -a, -um, *eighth.*
octo, *eight.*
octodecim, num. adj., *eighteen.*
octoginta, num. adj., *eighty.*
octogenti, -ae, -a, *eight hundred.*
oculus, -i, M., *eye.*
offero, offerre, obtuli, oblatum, *offer, present.*
officium, -i, N., *duty, allegiance.*
omnino, adv., *altogether, at all.*

omnis, omne, *all, every, the whole.*
onus, oneris, N., *load, burden.*
opis, opem, ope, pl. opes, F., *power, resources.*
oportet, oportere, oportuit, *it behooves, it is necessary.*
oppidum, -i, N., *town, walled town.*
oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *attack, besiege, assault.*
opus, operis, N., *work, labor.*
oratio, orationis, F., *speech, oration.*
orator, oratoris, M., *orator.*
orbis, -is, M., *the world.*
Orgetorix, -igis, M., *Orgetorix.*
oriens, gen. orientis, *rising.*
orior, oriri, ortus sum, *rise, arise, begin.*
ornamentum, -i, N., *ornament, distinction.*
oro, -are, -avi, -atum, *beseech, beg; implore, pray.*
os, oris, N., *mouth.*
os, ossis, N., *bone.*
ostendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *show, point out, exhibit.*

P

pabulum, -i, N., *food, fodder.*
paco, -are, -avi, -atum, *pacify, subdue.*
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
pagus, -i, *district, canton.*
par, gen. paris, *equal, like.*
paratus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready.*
pars, partis, F., *part, share; side; direction.*
parvus, -a, -um, M., *small, little.*
passus, -us, M., *step, pace;* mille passuum, *a mile.*
pateo, -ere, patui, —, *to extend, be open.*
pater, patris, M., *father.*
patior, pati, passus sum, *let, allow; suffer.*
patria, -ae, F., *native land, fatherland.*
pauci, -ae, -a, adj., pl., *few.*
pax, pacis, F., *peace.*
pellis, pellis, F., *skin.*
pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive out or away, banish, rout.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through, by means of, by.*
per-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead through or to, conduct;* fossam perducere, *to extend or make a trench.*
per-eo, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, *disappear, perish.*
per-facilis, -e, *very easy.*
perficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *accomplish.*
perfidia, -ae, F., *perfidy.*
periculosus, -a, -um, *dangerous.*
periculum, -i, N., *danger, risk, peril.*
peritus, -a, -um, *skilful, experienced.*
per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *permit, allow.*
per-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum, *prevail upon.*

perpauci, -ae, -a, *very few.*
per-sequor,-sequi,-secutus sum, *pursue.*
persevero, -are, -avi, -atum, *persevere, continue.*
persuadeo, -suadere, -suasi, -suasum, *persuade, prevail upon.*
per-terreo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *thoroughly frighten, terrify.*
pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *extend, pertain.*
per-turbo, -are, -avi, -atum, *greatly disturb, disturb.*
per-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *come through, come to; arrive, reach.*
pes, pedis, M., *foot.*
peto, petere, petivi, petitum, *ask, request, beseech, seek.*
Phillipus, -i, M., *Philip.*
pilum, -i, N., *javelin.*
Piso, -onis, M., *a Roman consul.*
placeo, placere, placui, placitum, *please;* placet, impers., *it pleases, it seems good.*
plebs, plebis, F., *commons, common people.*
plenus, -a, -um, *full.*
plurimus, -a, -um, *most.*
plus, pluris, *more.*
poena, -ae, F., *punishment.*
poeta, -ae, M., *poet.*
polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, *promise.*
Pompeius, -i, M., *Pompey.*
pono, ponere, posui, positum, *place, put;* castra ponere, *to pitch camp.*
pons, pontis, M., *bridge.*
populatio, -onis, F., *ravaging.*
populor,-ari,-atus sum, *ravage, lay waste.*
populus, -i, M., *people.*
porta, -ae, F., *gate.*
porto, -are, -avi, -atum, *carry, bear.*
posco, poscere, poposci, no sup., *demand.*
possessio, -onis, F., *possession.*
possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum, *be master of, possess.*
possum, posse, potui, *be able, can.*
post, prep. w. acc., *after.*
postea, adv., *after that, afterwards.*
post-ea quam, *after that, after.*
posterus,-a,-um, *following;* postero die, *on the following day.*
post-quam, conj., *after, as soon as.*
postridle, adv., *on the following day.*
postulo, -are, -avi, -atum, *ask for, demand.*
potens, *able, powerful, influential.*
potestas, -atis, F., *power, opportunity.*
potior, potiri, potitus sum, *acquire, obtain, get possession of.*
potius, adv., *rather, sooner.*
prae-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *surpass, excel; precede.*
praecipue, adv., *especially, chiefly,*

prae-dico, -are, -avi, -atum, *proclaim, declare; boast.*
prae-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *prefer.*
praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *place over, put in command of.*
prae-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *send forward.*
praemium, -i, N., *profit, reward.*
prae-pono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, *put before or first; prefer.*
praescribo, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *prescribe, direct.*
praesidium, -i, N., *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*
prae-sto, -stare, -stiti, -stitum, *stand before, excel.*
praesum, -esse, -fui, *be over, rule over, be in command of.*
praeter-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go by.*
praeter-quam, adv., *except.*
praetor, praetoris, M., *praetor, a Roman magistrate.*
premo, premere, pressi, pressum, *press, press upon.*
pretium, -i, N., *worth, value, price.*
pridie, adv., *on the day before.*
primo, adv., *at first.*
primum, *at first;* quam primum, *as soon as possible.*
primus, -a, -um, *first;* primum agmen, *the advance guard of an army.*
princeps, gen. principis, adj., *first, chief;* princeps, -ipis, M., *chief, leader.*
principatus, -us, M., *first place; pre-eminence.*
prior, prius, *the former; first.*
pristinus, -a, -um, *former.*
priusquam, adv., *before.*
privatus, -a, -um, *private.*
pro, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of.*
probo, -are, -avi, -atum, *show, prove.*
pro-cedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *go forth, proceed, advance.*
procuro, -are, -avi, -atum, *care for, take care of, manage.*
proelium, -i, n., *battle.*
profectio, -onis, F., *departure.*
proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum, *set out, depart.*
pro-fugio, -fugere, -fugi, *flee before, flee.*
prohibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum, *restrain, prevent, keep from, prohibit.*
proiicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectum, *throw forward.*
pro-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum, *move forward, advance.*
prope, adv., *near, almost.*
propero, -are, -avi, -atum, *hasten.*
propior, propius, *nearer.*
pro-pono, -ponere, -posui, positum, *lay before, propose.*
propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
propter-ea, adv., *for this reason.*

propterea quod, *because.*
pro-sum, prod-esse, pro-fui, *be for, be useful; benefit.*
provincia, -ae, F., *province.*
proxime, adv., *very near, very recently, last.*
proximus, -a, -um, *next, nearest, ensuing, last.*
puella, -ae, F., *girl.*
puer, pueri, M., *boy.*
pugna, -ae, F., *battle.*
pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, *fight.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*
punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *punish.*
puto, -are, -avi, -atum, *think, believe.*
Pyrenaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenean;* Pyrenaei montes, *the Pyrenees.*
Pyrrhus, -i, M., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

Q

qua, adv., *where.*
quadragesimus, -a, -um, *fortieth.*
quadraginta, num. adj. indecl., *forty.*
quaero, quaerere, quaesivi *and* quaesii, quaesitum, *seek, ask, inquire.*
qualis, quale, *of what sort.*
quam, conj. and adv., *than, as.*
quamobrem, adv., *on account of which thing, for which reason, wherefore.*
quare, adv., *for which thing, for which.*
quartus, -a, -um, *fourth.*
quasi, conj., *as if, as.*
quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four.*
-que, conj., *and* (enclitic).
quercus, -us, F., *oak tree.*
queror, queri, questus sum, *complain.*
quia, adv., *because.*
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what; that.*
quid, *why.*
quidam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam, *a certain.*
quidem, adv., *indeed;* ne—quidem, *not—even.*
quin, conj., *but that, that not.*
quintus, -a, -um, *fifth.*
quindecim, num. adj. indecl., *fifteen.*
quingenti, -ae, -a, *five hundred.*
quinque, indecl. adj., *five.*
quis, quae, quid, interrog. pronoun, *who, what.*
quis, indef. pronoun, *anybody, anything.*
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, *any one, anything, any.*
quo, adv., *that, in order that.*
quod, conj., *because, that.*
quoque, conj., *also.*

R

radix, radicis, F., *root;* radices montis, *the foot of a mountain.*
rapio, rapere, rapui, raptum, *seize, plunder.*

Rauraci, -orum, M., *a people in Gaul.*
recedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *withdraw, retire.*
recens, *recent, fresh, new.*
recipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum, *take back, receive;* se recipere, *to betake one's self, withdraw.*
red-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *return.*
red-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go back, return.*
redimo, -imere, -emi, -emptum, *buy back, purchase.*
reditio, -onis, F., *going back, return.*
reditus, -us, M., *return.*
re-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead back, lead.*
re-fero, -ferre, rettuli, -latum, *bear or bring back, restore.*
regio, -onis, F., *region.*
regius, -a, M., *royal.*
regno, -are, -avi, -atum, *reign, rule.*
regnum, -i, *royal power, sovereignty, government, kingdom.*
regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *return.*
reiicio, -iicere, -ieci, -iectum, *throw back, hurl back.*
re-linquo, -linquere, -liqui, -lictum, *leave behind, abandon.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of.*
re-maneo, -manere, -mansi, -mansum, *stay behind, remain.*
reminiscor, reminisci, *recall to mind, recollect.*
re-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum, *remove.*
re-nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, *report.*
re-paro, -are, -avi, -atum, *renew, recruit.*
re-pello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *repel, drive back, repulse.*
repente, adv., *suddenly.*
reperio, -perire, repperi, -pertum, *find, discover.*
re-pono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, *place again, restore.*
res, rei, F., *thing, affair.*
re-scindo, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *cut away, destroy.*
respondeo, -spondere, -spondi, -sponsum, *reply, answer.*
responsum, -i, M., *answer.*
res-publica, rei-publicae, F., *republic, commonwealth.*
restituo, -stituere, -stitui, stitutum, *restore.*
retineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *hold back, restrain, prevent.*
re-verto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, and
re-vertor, -verti, -versus sum, *turn back, return.*
re-voco, -are, -avi, -atum, *call back.*
rex, regis, M., *king.*
Rhenus, -i, M., *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -i, M., *the Rhone.*
ripa, -ae, F., *bank.*
rogo, -are, -avi, -atum, *ask, demand, request.*

Roma, -ae, F., *Rome.*
Romanus, -a, -um, *Roman*; Romanus, -i, M., *a Roman.*
Romulus, -i, M., *the founder of Rome.*
rupes, rupis, F., *rock, cliff.*

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saepe-numero, adv., *oftentimes, frequently.*
Santones, -um, M. pl., *a people of Aquitania.*
sanus, -a, -um, *healthy.*
sapientia, -ae, F., *wisdom.*
sarcina, -ae, F., *pack;* pl., *baggage.*
satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently.*
satis-facio, -facere, -feci, -factum, *satisfy, give satisfaction.*
scelus, sceleris, N., *crime, guilt, wickedness.*
scio, scire, scivi, scitum, *know, understand.*
Scipio, -onis, M., *Scipio.*
scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *write.*
scutum, -i, N., *a shield.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sedes, sedis, F., *seat, dwelling-place.*
semel, adv., *once.*
semper, adv., *always, continually.*
senatus, -us, M., *senate.*
sententia, -ae, F., *opinion.*
septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven.*
septemtriones, -um, M., pl., *the north.*
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*
Sequana, -ae, M., *a river of Gaul.*
Sequani, -orum, M. pl., *a people of Gaul.*
Sequanus, -a, -um, *of the Sequani.*
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow, accompany.*
sermo, sermonis, M., *speech, conversation.*
servitus, -utis, F., *slavery, bondage.*
servus, -i, M., *slave, servant.*
sex, num. adj. indecl., *six.*
sexcentesimus, -a, -um, *six hundredth.*
sextus, -a, -um, *sixth.*
si, conj., *if, whether.*
sic, adv., *so, thus.*
signum, -i, N., *signal.*
silva, -ae, F., *woods, forest.*
similis, simile, *like, similar.*
sin, conj., *but, if.*
sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*
singuli, -ae, -a, *single, one by one.*
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left.*
socer, soceri, M., *father-in-law.*
socius, -i, M., *ally.*
sol, solis, M., *sun.*
soleo, solere, solitus sum, *be wont, be accustomed.*
solitudo, -inis, F., *desert, solitary place, solitude.*
solum, adv., *only, alone.*

solum, -i, N., *ground, soil.*
solus, -a, -um, *alone, sole.*
sonitus, -us, M., *sound, noise.*
soror, sororis, F., *sister.*
spatium, -i, N., *space; opportunity.*
specto, -are, -avi, -atum, *look at, be situated.*
spes, spei, F., *hope, expectation.*
spiritus, -us, M., *breath; pride.*
sponte, F., abl., *of free will;* sua sponte, *of his own free will.*
statim, adv., *immediately.*
statuo, statuere, statui, statutum, *set up, put, establish, decide.*
sto, stare, steti, statum, *stand.*
studeo, studere, studui (no sup.), *be eager or zealous, desire.*
studium, -i, N., *zeal, desire.*
suadeo, suadere, suasi, suasum, *advise, persuade.*
sub, prep. w. abl., *under;* sub monte, *at the foot of a mountain.*
sub-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *draw from under, withdraw, take away.*
sub-eo, -ire, -ivi and -ii, -itum, *go under, endure.*
subito, adv., *suddenly, quickly.*
sub-igo, -ere, -egi, -ectum, *subdue, conquer.*
succedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *succeed, follow.*
Suessiones, -um, M. pl., *the Suessiones.*
Suevi, -orum, M. pl., *a people of Germany.*
sui, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
sum, esse, fui, *be.*
summa, -ae, F., *amount, sum, total.*
summus, -a, -um, *highest.*
sumo, sumere, sumpsi, sumptum, *take, assume.*
super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon.*
superior, superius, *upper, higher, former.*
supero, -are, -avi, -atum, *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue.*
super-sum, -esse, -fui, *be over, survive.*
superus, -a, -um, *above, on high, upper.*
supplicium, -i, N., *punishment.*
supra, adv., *above, before.*
suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum, *undertake;* sibi suscipere, *to take upon one's self.*
suspicio, -onis, F., *suspicion.*
suspicor, -ari, -atus sum, *suspect.*
sustineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *hold up, sustain, endure, withstand.*
suus, -a, -um, *his, its, their;* sui, -orum, *his men;* sua, *their possessions.*

T

T., *abbreviation of Titus.*
tabula, -ae, F., *list, muster-roll,*

tam, adv., *so, so very.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still.*
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such, so large.*
tectum, -i, N., *roof.*
telum, -i, N., *weapon, missile.*
tempero, -are, -avi, -atum, *abstain.*
tempestas, -atis, F., *storm, tempest.*
templum, -i, N., *temple.*
tempus, temporis, N., *time.*
teneo, tenere, tenui, tentum, *hold, have, possess, keep, restrain;* memoria tenere, *to remember.*
tento, -are, -avi, -atum, *try.*
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land, ground.*
terreo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *frighten, terrify.*
territorium, -i, N., *territory.*
timeo, -ere, -ui (no supine), *to fear.*
timidus, -a, -um, *timid, cowardly.*
timor, timoris, M., *fear.*
tollo, tollere, sustuli, sublatum, *lift, raise, take away.*
totus, -a, -um, *whole, entire.*
tracto, -are, -avi, -atum, *treat.*
traduco and transduco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *lead across.*
traicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, *throw across, pierce, transport.*
trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond.*
trans-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *go across or over, cross.*
trans-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *bear across, transfer.*
trans-porto, -are, -avi, -atum, *carry across, transport.*
tres, tria, *three.*
tribunus, -i, M., *tribune;* tribuni militum, *military tribunes.*
tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributum, *give, grant, bestow.*
tricesimus, -a, -um, *thirtieth.*
triduum, -i, N., *three days.*
triginta, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*
tristis, triste, *sad, sorrowful.*
triumpho, -are, -avi, -atum, *to triumph.*
Troia, -ae, F., *Troy.*
tu, pers. pron., *thou, you.*
tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet.*
tubicen, -inis, M., *trumpeter.*
Tulingi, -orum, M. pl., *a people of Germany.*
tum, adv., *then, also;* tum—tum, *both—and.*
tumulus, -i, M., *mound.*
turris, turris, F., *tower.*
tutus, -a, -um, *safe.*
tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine; your, yours.*

U

ubi, adv., *when, where.*
ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, *take revenge, avenge.*

Ulixes, -is, M., *Ulysses.*
ullus, -a, -um, *any.*
ulterior, ulterius, *farther.*
ultimus, -a, -um, *last, uttermost, farthest.*
ultra, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*
una, adv., *along with.*
unde, adv., *from which place, whence.*
undecim, adj. indecl., *eleven.*
undecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*
undique, adv., *from all parts, on all sides.*
unus, -a, -um, *one, single;* pl., *alone.*
urbs, urbis, F., *city.*
usque, adv., *even, till.*
usus, -us, M., *use, advantage.*
ut and uti, conj., *that, in order that, as.*
uter, utra, utrum, *which of two, which.*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each, both.*
utilis, utile, *useful, beneficial, profitable.*
utor, uti, usus sum, *use, make use of, adopt.*
utrum, adv., *whether.*
uxor, uxoris, F., *wife.*

V

vaco, -are, -avi, -atum, *be unoccupied.*
vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty.*
vadum, -i, N., *ford, shallow.*
vagor, -ari, -atus sum, *roam about, wander about.*
valeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *prevail.*
validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful.*
vallum, -i, N., *rampart, entrenchment.*
vasto, -are, -avi, -atum, *lay waste, devastate.*
vectigal, vectigalis, N., *tax, revenue.*
vehementer, vehementius, vehementissime, adv., *violently, severely, vehemently.*
vel, conj., *or;* vel—vel, *either—or.*
vendo, vendere, vendidi, venditum, *sell.*
venio, venire, veni, ventum, *come, arrive at.*
verbum, -i, N., *word.*
vereor, vereri, veritus sum, *fear.*
vero, adv., *in truth, truly, indeed, but.*
vescor, vesci, *eat, devour.*
Vesontio, -onis, F., *the chief town of the Sequani.*
vesper, vesperis and vesper, -i, M., *evening star, evening;* ad vesperum, *till evening.*
vester, vestra, vestrum, pos. pron., *your, yours.*
vetus, gen. veteris, *old, veteran, ancient.*
vexillum, -i, N., *standard, flag.*
vexo, -are, -avi, -atum, *trouble, annoy, harass.*
via, -ae, F., *way, road, path, march.*
vicesimus, -a, -um, *twentieth.*
victor, -oris, M., *conqueror.*

victoria, -ae, F., *victory.*
vicus, -i, M., *village.*
video, videre, vidi, visum, *see.*
videor, videri, visus sum, pass. and deponent, *be seen, seem.*
vigilia, -ae, F., *watch;* de tertia vigilia, *in the third watch.*
viginti, num. adj., indecl., *twenty.*
vinco, vincere, vici, victum, *conquer.*
vinculum, -i, N., *a chain.*
vindico, -are, -avi, -atum, *claim.*
vir, viri, M., *man, hero.*
virgo, -inis, F., *virgin.*
virtus, virtutis, F., *valor, courage, virtue.*
vis, F., *strength, power.*
vita, -ae, F., *life.*
vito, -are, -avi, -atum, *shun, avoid.*
vix, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*
voco, -are, -avi, -atum, *call, summon, invite.*
volo, velle, volui, *be willing, wish, desire.*
voluntas, -atis, F., *wish, consent.*
vos, pers. pron. pl., *you.*
vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum, *to wound.*
vulnus, vulneris, *a wound.*

X

Xerxes, -is, M., *Xerxes, king of Persia.*

ENGLISH—LATIN.

A

able, be able, *possum, posse, potui.*
about (with numerals), *ad;* about (concerning), *de,* with abl.
absent, be absent, *absum, abesse, afui.*
abundance, *copia, -ae,* F.
accept, *accipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.*
accuse, *accuso, -are, -avi, -atum.*
across, *trans* (prep. w. acc.)
act, *ago, -ere, egi, actum.*
adopt, *utor, uti, usus sum* (w. object in abl.)
advise, *moneo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
Aedui, the, *Aedui, -orum,* M. pl.
affair, *res, rei,* F.
Africa, *Africa, -ae,* F.
after (prep. w. acc.), *post;* (conj.), *postquam.*
afterwards, adv., *postea.*
against, *in, contra* (prep. w. acc.)
aid, *auxilium, -i,* N.
all, *omnis, -e;* all, the whole, *totus, -a, -um.*
Allobroges, the, *Allobroges, -um,* M. pl.
ally, *socius, -i,* M.
almost, adv., *fere, paene.*
alone, *solus, -a, -um.*
Alps, *Alpes, -ium,* F. pl.
also, *quoque, etiam.*
already, *iam.*
although, *cum.*
always, *semper.*
ambassador, *legatus, -i,* M.
among, *apud, inter* (prep. w. acc.); *in* (prep. w. abl.)
ancient, *antiquus, -a, -um.*
and (conj.), *et, -que* (enclitic); both . . . and, *et . . . et.*
animal, *animal, -is,* N.
announce, *nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum.*
another, *alius, -a, -ud.*
answer, *respondeo, -ere, -spondi, -sponsum.*
any, *ullus, -a, -um.*
approach, *appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
Aquitania, *Aquitania, -ae,* F.
Arar, *Arar, -is,* M.
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, -i,* M.
arms, *arma, -orum,* N. pl.
army, *exercitus, -us,* M.
around, *circum.*
arrival, *adventus, -us,* M.
arrive, *pervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.*
arrow, *sagitta, -ae,* F.
art, *ars, artis,* F.
ascertain, *cognosco, -ere, -novi, -nitum.*
Asia, *Asia, -ae,* F.
ask (inquire), *quaero, -ere, -sivi, -situm;* ask for, *rogo, -are, -avi, -atum.*

assemble, *convenio, -ire, -veni, ventum.*
at, at home, *domi;* w. names of towns, the locative.
Athenian (adj.), *Atheniensis, -e;* the Athenians, *Athenienses.*
Athens, *Athenae, -arum,* F. pl.
attack, *impetus, -us,* M.; to attack, *oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum.*
attempt, *conor, -ari, -atus sum;* an attempt, *conatus, -us,* M.
author, *auctor, -is,* M.; *scriptor, -oris,* M.
auxiliaries, *auxilia, -orum,* N. pl.
away from; *a* or *ab, e or ex* (preps. w. acc.); go away, *abeo, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*

B

bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
badly, *male.*
baggage, *impedimenta, -orum,* N. pl.
bank, *ripa, -ae,* F.
barbarous, *barbarus, -a, -um.*
battle, *proelium, -i,* N.; *pugna, -ae,* F.
be, *sum, esse, fui;* be away from or distant from, *absum, abesse, afui.*
bear, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum;* to bear arms, *arma ferre.*
beast (of burden), *iumentum, -i;* wild beast, *fera, -ae,* F.
beautiful, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*
because, *quod.*
become, *fio, -eri, factus sum.*
before, *ante* (prep. w. acc.); *ante, priusquam* (adverbs of time).
beg for, *peto, -ere, -ivi, -itum; oro, -are, -avi, -atum.*
begin, *initium capere* (see *capio*); *incipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.*
beginning, *initium, -i,* N.
Belgians, the, *Belgae, -arum,* M. pl.
believe, *credo, -ere, -idi, -itum.*
besiege, *obsideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.*
best (adj.), *optimus, -a, -um;* (adv.), *optime.*
better (adj.), *melior, -ius;* (adv.), *melius.*
between, *inter* (prep. w. acc.)
beyond, *ultra* (prep. and adv.)
big, *magnus, -a, -um.*
bold, *audax.*
boldly, *audacter.*
book, *liber, libri,* M.
both . . . and, *et . . . et.*
bound, *contineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum.*
boundaries, *fines, -ium,* M. pl.
boy, *puer, -i,* M.
brave, *fortis, -e.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
bravery, *fortitudo, -inis,* F.; *virtus, -utis,* F.
bridge, *pons, -tis,* M.
bring, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum; porto, -are, -avi, -atum;* bring in, *importo.*
Britain, *Britannia, -ae,* F.

broad, *latus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frater, fratris,* M.
Brutus, *Brutus, -i,* M.
build, *aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum.*
building, *aedificium, -i,* N.
burn, *incendo, -ere, -di, -sum.*
but, *sed, autem.*
buy, *emo, -ere, -emi, -emptum;* buy up, *coemo.*
by, *a, ab* (prep. w. abl.)

C

Caesar, *Caesar, -is,* M.
call, *appello, -are, -avi, -atum;* call together, *convoco, -are, -avi, -atum.*
camp, *castra, -orum,* N. pl.
can, *possum, posse, potui.*
captive, *captivus, -i,* M.
capture, *capio, -ere, -cepi, captum;* capture by storm, *expugno, -are, -avi, -atum.*
Capua, *Capua, -ae,* F.
care, *cura, -ae,* F.
carry, *porto, -are, -avi, -atum;* carry on, *gero, -ere, gessi, gestum;* carry on or wage war, *bellum gerere.*
cart, *carrus, -i,* M.
Carthage, *Carthago, -inis,* F.
Casticus, *Casticus, -i,* M.
Cato, *Cato, -onis,* M.
cause, *causa, -ae,* F.
cavalry, *equitatus, -us,* M.; *equites, -um,* M. pl.; of cavalry, *equester, -a, -um.*
cavalryman, *eques, equitis,* M.
celebrated, *clarus, -a, -um.*
chance, *fors, -tis,* F.; opportunity, *potestas, -atis,* F.
character, *natura, -ae,* F.
chief, *princeps, -cipis,* M.
children, *liberi, -orum,* M. pl.
choose, *creo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
Cicero, *Cicero, -onis,* M.
citadel, *arx, -cis,* F.
citizen, *civis, -is,* M.
city, *urbs, urbis,* F.
civilization, *cultus, -us,* M.
Collatinus, *Collatinus, -i,* M.
collect, *comporto, -are, -avi, -atum; confero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum.*
column (of troops), *agmen, agminis,* N.
come, *venio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.*
command, *impero, -are, -avi, -atum* (w. dat.); be in command of, *praesum, -esse, -fui* (w. dat.)
commander, *imperator, -oris,* M.; *dux, ducis,* M.
concerning, *de* (w. abl.)
condition, *condicio, -onis,* F.
confidence, *fides, -ei,* F.
conquer, *vinco, -ere, -vici, -victum; supero, -are, -avi, -atum.*
consent, *voluntas, -atis,* F.
conspiracy, *coniuratio, -onis,* F.
construct, *construo, -ere, -struxi, -structum;* also see *build.*
consul, *consul, -is,* M.
continually, *continenter.*
corn, *frumentum, -i,* N.
council, *concilium, -i,* N.
counsel, *consilium, i,* N.

country, native land, *patria, -ae*, F.
courage, *virtus, -utis*, F.
courageous, *fortis, -e*.
cross, *transeo, -ire, -ivi* or *-ii, itum*.
cruel, *crudelis, -e*.
cruelty, *crudelitas, -atis*, F.
custom, *institutum, -i*, N.

D

danger, *periculum, -i*, N.
dangerous, *periculosus, -a, -um*.
daughter, *filia, -ae*, F.
dawn, at, see *daybreak*.
day, *dies, -ei*, M.; on that day, *eo die*; on the same day, *eodem die*; on the following day, *postero die*.
daybreak, at, *prima luce*.
death, *mors, mortis*, M.
decide, see *determine*.
decision, *indicium, -i*, N.
deep, *altus, -a, -um*.
defend, *defendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensum*.
delay, *moror, -ari, -atus sum*; noun, *mora, -ae*, F.
deliberate, *delibero, -are, -avi, -atum*.
demand, *postulo, -are, -avi, -atum*; *posco, -ere, poposci*.
depart, *discedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum*.
design, *consilium, i*, N.
desire, *cupiditas, -atis*, F.
desirous, *cupidus, -a, -um*.
destroy, *deleo, -ere, -levi, -letum*.
determine, *constituo, -ere, -ui, -utum*.
devastate, *vasto, -are, -avi, -atum*.
die, *morior, mori, mortuus sum*.
differ, *differo, differe, distuli, dilatum*.
difficult, *difficilis, -e*.
difficulty, *difficultas, -atis*, F.; with difficulty, *vix*.
direction, *pars, partis*, F.
distance, *spatium, -i*, N.
distant, be, *absum, -esse, afui*.
disturb, *commoveo, -ere, -movi, -motum*.
ditch, *fossa, -ae*, F.
do, *facio, -ere, feci, factum*.
draw up (form), *instruo, -ere, struxi, -structum*.
dwell, *incolo, -ere, -colui*, —.

E

each, each one, *quisque, quaeque, quidque* or *quodque*.
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis, -e*.
eight, *octo* (indecl.)
eighth, *octavus, -a, -um*.
eighty, *octoginta*.
either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*.
embassy, *legatio, -onis*, F.
empire, *imperium, -i*, N.
empty (into), see *flow*.
encamp, *castra ponere*.
encourage, *confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum*.
end, *finis, -is*, M.
endure, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum*,

enemy, *hostis, -is,* M.; personal enemy, *inimicus, -i,* M.
enervate, *effemino, -are, -avi, -atum.*
enlist, see *enroll.*
enroll, *conscribo, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum.*
entire, *totus, -a, -um.*
entreat, *oro, -are, -avi, -atum; imploro, -are, -avi, -atum.*
envoy, *legatus, -i,* M.
establish, *confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
even, *etiam;* not even, *ne quidem.*
excel, *praecedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum* (w. acc.); *praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitum* (w. dat.)
evil-doing, *maleficium, -i,* N.
ever, *unquam.*
everyone, *quisque, quaeque, quidque* or *quodque.*
exhort, *hortor, -ari, -atus sum.*
expectation, *spes, spei,* F.
experience, *usus, -us,* M.
extraordinary, *incredibilis, -e.*
eye, *oculus, -i,* M.

F

far, by far, *longe;* far and wide, *longe lateque.*
farmer, *agricola, -ae,* M.
farther, adj., *ulterior, -ius;* adv., *longius.*
farthest, adj., *ultimus, -a, -um;* adv., *longissime.*
father, *pater, patris,* M.
father-in-law, *socer, -i,* M.
fatherland, *patria, -ae,* F.
fear, *timor, -oris,* M.; *metus, -us,* M.; to fear, *timeo, -ere, -ui,* —
few, *pauci, -orum,* M. pl.
field, *ager, agri,* M.
fierce, *acer, acris, acre.*
fiercely, *acriter.*
fifteen, *quindecim* (indecl.)
fifth, *quintus, -a, -um.*
fight, *pugno, -are, -avi, -atum.*
find, *reperio, -ire, repperi, repertum.*
fire, *ignis, -is,* M.
first, adj., *primus, -a, -um;* adv., at first, *primo.*
five, *quinque* (indecl.)
flee, *fugio, -ere, fugi, fugitum.*
fleet, *classis, -is,* F.
flight, *fuga, -ae,* F.; put to flight, *fugo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
flow, *fluo, -ere, fluxi, fluxum;* flow into, *influo.*
follow, *sequor, sequi, secutus sum.*
fond, *cupidus, -a, -um.*
foot, *pes, pedis,* M.
for, conj., *enim, nam;* for (the sake of), *pro,* prep. w. abl.
force, *vis,* F.
forces, *copiae, -arum,* F. pl.
forest, *silva, -ae,* F.
forget, *obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum.*
form, see *draw up.*
former, *pristinus, -a, -um; vetus;* former . . . latter, *ille . . . hic.*
forth, lead forth, *educo, -ere, -duxi, -ductum.*
fortify, *munio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*

fortune, *fortuna, -ae,* F.
forty, *quadraginta.*
forward, send, *praemitto, -ere, -misi, -missum.*
found, *condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum;* from the founding of the city, *ab urbe condita.*
free, *liber, -a, -um;* to free, see *liberate.*
freely, *libere.*
friend, *amicus, -i,* M.
friendship, *amicitia, -ae,* F.
from, *a, ab* (prep. w. abl.); from, out of, *e, ex* (prep. w. abl.)
further, see *farther.*

G

Galba, *Galba, -ae,* M.
Garumna, *Garumna, -de,* M.
Gaul, *Gallia, -ae,* F.
Gauls, the, *Galli, -orum,* M. pl.
general, *dux, ducis,* M.
generosity, *liberalitas, -atis,* F.
Geneva, *Geneva, -ae,* F.
get possession of, *potior, -iri, -itus sum* (w. abl.)
girl, *puella, -ae,* F.
give, *do, dare, dedi, datum.*
glory, *gloria, -ae,* F.
go, *eo, ire, ivi, itum;* go out of, *ex-eo.*
god, *deus, -i,* M.
goddess, *dea, -ae,* F.
good, *bonus, -a, -um.*
government, *imperium, -i,* N.
grain, *frumentum, -i,* N.
grandfather, *avus, -i,* M.
grant, *concedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.*
great, *magnus, -a, -um;* so great, *tantus, -a, -um.*
Greece, *Graecia, -ae,* F.
Greek, a, *Graecus, -i,* M.
guard, *custos, -odis,* M.; to guard, *custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*

H

Hannibal, *Hannibal, -is,* M.
happen, *accido, -ere, -cidi,* —.
happy, *felix.*
hasten, *contendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum.*
have, *habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
hear, *audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*
height, *altitudo, -inis,* F.
Helvetii, the, *Helvetii, -orum,* M. pl.
high, *altus, -a, -um.*
higher, *altior, -ius.*
highest, *altissimus, -a, -um.*
hill, *collis, -is,* M.
hindrance, *impedimentum, -i,* N.
his, his own, *suus, -a, -um.*
hither, *citerior, -ius.*
hold, *teneo, -ere, -ui, -tum; obtineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum;* hold back, *prohibeo, -ere, -ui, -bitum.*
home, at home, *domi;* home (to one's home), *domum;* from home, *domo.*
hope, *spes, spei,* F.; to hope, *spero, -are, -avi, -atum.*
horse, *equus, -i,* M.
horseman, *eques, -itis,* M.

hostage, *obses, -idis*, M.
hour, *hora, -ae*, F.
house, *domus, -us*, F.
huge, *ingens*.

I

I, *ego, mei*.
if, *si*; if not, *nisi*.
implore, *imploro, -are, -avi, -atum*.
import, *importo, -are, -avi, -atum*.
in, *in* (prep. w. abl.)
incite, *incito, -are, -avi, -atum*.
industry, *industria, -ae*, F.
influence, *auctoritas, -atis*, F.
influenced, *adductus, -a, -um*.
inform, *certiorem facio*.
inhabit, *incolo, -ere, -ui*, —.
inhabitant, *incola, -ae*, M.
injury, *iniuria, -ae*, F.
inquire, *quaero, -ere, -sivi, -situm*.
into, *in* (prep. w. acc.)
invite, *invito, -are, -avi, -atum*.
Ireland, *Hibernia, -ae*, F.
island, *insula, -ae*, F.
it, *id* (neuter of *is*).

J

javelin, *pilum, -i*, N.
journey, *iter, itineris*, N.
judge, *iudex, iudicis*, M.
judgment, *iudicium, -i*, N.
Jura, *Iura, -ae*, M.
just, *iustus, -a, -um*.
justice, *iustitia, -ae*, F.

K

keep, *teneo, -ere, -ui, -tum*; keep from, out of, or away from, *prohibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum*.
kill, *interficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum*.
king, *rex, regis*, M.
kingdom, *regnum, -i*, N.
know, *scio, scire, scivi, scitum*.

L

Labienus, *Labienus, -i*, M.
labor, *labor, -oris*, M.
lake, *lacus, -us*, M.
land, *terra, -ae*, F.; native land or fatherland, *patria, -ae*, F.
language, *lingua, -ae*, F.
large, *magnus, -a, -um*.
law, *lex, legis*, F.
lately, *nuper*.
lay waste, *vasto, -are, -avi, -atum*.
lead, *duco, -ere, duxi, ductum*; lead forth or out of, *e-duco*; lead off or from, *ab-duco*.
leader, *dux, ducis*, M.
learn, *cognosco, -ere, -novi, -nitum*.
leave, *relinquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum*.
left, *sinister, -tra, -trum*.
legion, *legio, -onis*, F.
letter, *epistula, -ae*, F.
levy, see *enroll*.
liberate, *libero, -are, -avi, -atum*.
liberty, *libertas, -atis*, F.
lieutenant, *legatus, -i*, M.
like, *similis, -e*.

line of battle, *acies, -ei,* F.
long, *longus, -a, -um;* for a long time, *diu.*
love, *amo, -are, -avi, -atum.*

M

maiden, *virgo, -inis,* F.
make, *facio, -ere, feci, factum;* make haste, *maturo, -are, -avi, -atum;* make war upon, *bellum inferre.*
man, *vir, -i,* M.; *homo, -inis,* M.
many, *multi, -ae, -a,* pl.
march, or line of march, *iter, itineris,* N.; to march, *iter facere.*
marriage, *matrimonium, -i,* N.
master, *dominus, -i,* M.
me, *me* (acc. of *ego*).
meantime, *interea.*
memory, *memoria, -ae,* F.
mile, *mille passuum.*
military, *militaris, -e.*
mind, *animus, -i,* M.; *mens, -tis,* F.
mine, *meus, -a, -um.*
missile, *telum, -i,* N.
money, *pecunia, -ae,* F.
month, *mensis, -is,* M.
more, *plus.*
mother, *mater, matris,* F.
mountain, *mons, -tis,* N.
move, *moveo, -ere, movi, motum.*
much, *multus, -a, -um.*
multitude, *multitudo, -inis,* F.
muster, see *enroll.*
my, *meus, -a, -um.*

N

narrow, *angustus, -a, -um.*
nature, *natura, -ae,* F.
nation, *natio, -onis,* F.
native land, *patria, -ae,* F.
near, *ad* (prep. w. acc.)
nearer, *propior, -ius.*
nearest, *proximus, -a, -um.*
nearly, *fere, paene.*
neighboring, *finitimus, -a, -um.*
neighbors, *finitimi, -orum,* M.
neither...nor, *neque...neque.*
never, *nunquam.*
nevertheless, *nihilominus.*
night, *nox, noctis,* F.
nine, *novem* (indecl.)
ninety, *nonaginta* (indecl.)
ninth, *nonus, -a, -um.*
nobility, *nobilitas, -atis,* F.
noble, *nobilis, -e.*
noblest, *nobilissimus, -a, -um.*
nor, see *neither.*
not, *non;* in questions, *nonne;* not even, *ne quidem;* that.... not, *ne.*
nothing, *nihil,* N. (indecl.)
notice, *animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versum.*
number, *numerus, -i,* M.

O

obey, *pareo, -ere, -ui,* —(w.dat.)
obtain, *obtineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum.*
occupy, *occupo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
often, *saepe.*
old, *senex; vetus.*

on, *in* (prep. w. abl.); on account of, *propter;* on all sides, *undique;* on the day before, *pridie;* on the following day, *postero die;* on the same day, *eodem die;* on that day, *eo die.*
one, *unus, -a, -um;* the one... the other, *alter...alter.*
opportunity, *potestas, -atis,* F.
or, *aut;* either...or, *aut...aut.*
orator, *orator, -oris,* M.
order, *impero, -are, -avi, -atum* (w. dat.); *iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum* (w. acc.)
other, *alius, -a, -ud;* the one... the other, *alius...alius,* or *alter...alter.*
ought, *debeo, -ere, -ui, -bitum.*
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
out of, *e* or *ex* (prep. w. abl.)
over, *trans* (prep. w. acc.)
overcome, *supero, -are, -avi, -atum.*
own, their own, *suus, -a, -um.*

P

part, *pars, -tis,* F.
pass, *angustiae, -arum,* F.
peace, *pax, pacis,* F.
penetrate to, *commeo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
people, *populus, -i,* M.
peril, *periculum, -i,* N.
perilous, *periculosus, -a, -um.*
Persia, *Persia, -ae,* F.
Persians, the, *Persae, -arum,* M. pl.
persuade, *persuadeo, -ere, -suasi, -suasum* (w. dat.)
phalanx, *phalanx, -angis,* F.
pitch camp, *castra ponere.*
place, *locus, -i,* M.; pl. *loca, -orum,* N.; to this place, *eo* (adv.)
place, put, *pono, -ere, posui, positum.*
plain, *planities, -ei,* F.
plan, *consilium, -i,* N.
please, *placeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
poet, *poeta, -ae,* M.
possession, take possession of, *potior, -iri, -itus sum* (w. abl.)
possible, *quam,* with superlative, as, the greatest possible number, *quam maximus numerus.*
power, chief power, *regnum, -i,* N.
praise, *laudo, -are, -avi, -atum;* as noun, *laus, laudis,* F.
prefer, *malo, malle, malui.*
prepare, *paro, -are, -avi, -atum.*
prepared, see *ready.*
present, be present, *adsum, adesse, adfui.*
prevent, *retineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum.*
private, *priuatus, -a, -um.*
promise, *polliceor, -eri, pollicitus sum.*
protection, *praesidium, -i,* N.
province, *provincia, -ae,* F.
prudence, *prudentia, -ae,* F.
prudent, *prudens.*
pursue, *persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum.*

Q

queen, *regina, -ae,* F.
quick, *celer, -is, -e.*
quickly, *celeriter;* very quickly, *celerrime.*

R

read, *lego, -ere, legi, lectum.*
ready, *paratus, -a, -um.*
reason, *causa, -ae,* F.; for these reasons, *his rebus.*
refinement, *humanitas, -atis,* F.
reign, *regno, -are, -avi, -atum.*
remain, *maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum.*
remaining, *reliquus, -a, -um.*
remove, *removeo, -ere, -movi, -motum.*
reply, *respondeo, -ere, -sponsi, -sponsum.*
report, *enuntio, -are, -avi, -atum.*
resolve, see *determine.*
rest of, the, *reliquus, -a, -um.*
restrain, *prohibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
return, *reverto, -ere, -verti, -versum.*
reveal, see *report.*
reward, *praemium, -i,* N.
Rhine, *Rhenus, -i,* M.
Rhone, *Rhodanus, -i,* M.
rich, *dives;* richest, *ditissimus, -a, -um.*
ridge, *iugum, -i,* N.
right, *ius, iuris,* N.; adj., *dexter, -tra, -trum.*
river, *flumen, -inis,* N.
road, *via, -ae,* F.
Roman, *Romanus, -a, -um.*
Rome, *Roma, -ae;* at Rome, *Romae;* to Rome, *Romam;* from Rome, *Roma.*
route, *iter, itineris,* N.
royal power, *regnum, -i,* N.
ruler, *imperator, -oris,* M.

S

sad, *tristis, -e.*
safety, *salus, -utis,* F.
sailor, *nauta, -ae,* M.
same, the, *idem, eadem, idem.*
satisfy, *satisfacio, -ere, -feci, -factum.*
say, *dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.*
scarcity, see *want.*
scout, *explorator, -oris,* M.
sea, *mare, maris,* N.
seaman, *nauta, -ae,* M.
see, *video, -ere, vidi, visum.*
seem, *videor, -eri, visus sum.*
seize, *occupo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
seldom, very seldom, *minime saepe.*
select, *deligo, -ere, -legi, -lectum.*
senate, *senatus, -us,* M.
senator, *senator, -oris,* M.
send, *mitto, -ere, misi, missum;* send forward, *prae-mitto;* send away, *de-mitto.*
separate, *divido, -ere, -visi, -visum.*
Sequani, *Sequani, -orum,* M. pl.
set out, *proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum.*
settle, *consideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.*

seven, *septem* (indecl.)
seventy, *septuaginta* (indecl.)
severe, *gravis, -e.*
severely, *graviter.*
shield, *scutum, -i,* N.
ship, *navis, -is,* F.
short, *brevis, -e.*
side, on this side of, *citra;* on the other side, *ultra;* on all sides, *undique.*
sight, *conspectus, -us,* M.
signal, *signum, -i,* N.
since, *cum* (w. subj.)
single, *unus, -a, -um.*
sister, *soror, -oris,* F.
six, *sex* (indecl.)
sixth, *sextus, -a, -um.*
sixty, *sexaginta.*
skill, *experientia, -ae,* F.
slave, *servus, -i,* M.
slavery, *servitus, -utis,* F.
small, *parvus, -a, -um.*
so, *ita;* w. adj., *tam.*
soldier, *miles, -itis,* M.
some, some one, *aliquis, -qua, -quid* or *-quod.*
son, *filius, -i,* M.; voc., *fili;* son-in-law, *gener, -i,* M.
Spain, *Hispania, -ae,* F.
speak, *loquor, loqui, locutus sum.*
spear, *hasta, -ae,* F.
spy, *explorator, -oris,* M.
speech, *oratio, -onis,* F.
stand, *sto, stare, steti, statum.*
state, *civitas, -atis,* F.
station, *conloco, -are, -avi, -atum.*
stay, see *remain.*
stern, *severus, -a, -um.*
storm, *tempestas, -atis,* F.
storm, to, see *take by storm.*
strength, *vires, -ium,* F. pl.
strengthen, *confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
strive, *nitor, niti, nisus sum.*
such (so great), *tantus, -a, -um.*
Suevi, the, *Suevi, -orum,* M. pl.
sufficient, sufficiently, *satis.*
suitable, *idoneus, -a, -um.*
summer, *aestas, -atis,* F.
summon, see *call together.*
sun, *sol, solis,* M.; at sunrise, *sole oriente;* at sunset, *occasu solis.*
supply, *copia, -ae,* F.; to supply, *praebeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
surround, *cingo, -ere, cinxi, cinctum.*
survive, *supersum, -esse; -fui.*
suspicion, *suspicio, -onis,* F.
sustain, *sustineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum.*
swift, *celer, -is, -e.*
swiftly, *celeriter.*
sword, *gladius, -i,* M.; with sword and fire, *gladio ignique.*

T

take (capture), *capio, -ere, cepi, captum;* take by storm, *expugno, -are, -avi, -atum;* take possession of, *potior, -iri, -itus sum* (w. abl.)
teach, *doceo, -ere, -ui, -tum* (w. two acc.)
tell, see *report.*
temple, *templum, -i,* N.
ten, *decem* (indecl.)

tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.*
tend, *pertineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum.*
territory, *ager, agri,* M.; *fines, finium,* M.
than, *quam.*
that, *ille, -a, -ud;* that (of yours), *iste, -a, -ud.*
that, in order that, *ut;* that... not, *ne* (in clauses of purpose).
there, in that place, *ibi.*
their, their own, *suus, -a, -um.*
then, *tum.*
they, *ii* or *ei,* gen., *eorum.*
thing, *res, rei,* F.; this thing, *hoc;* these things, *haec.*
think, *arbitror, -ari, -atus sum.*
third, *tertius, -a, -um.*
thirteen, *tredecim* (indecl.)
thirty, *triginta* (indecl.)
this, *hic, haec, hoc.*
thousand, *mille* (indecl.); thousands, *milia* (see p. 145).
three, *tres, tria.*
three hundred, *trecenti, -ae, -a.*
through, *per* (prep. w. acc.)
throw, *iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum.*
time, *tempus, -oris,* N.; for a long time, *diu;* in a short time, *brevi tempore;* at the same time, *eodem tempore;* at that time, *eo tempore.*
to, towards, *ad* (prep. w. acc.)
to-day, *hodie.*
together, come together, *convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.*
tongue, *lingua, -ae,* F.
tower, *turris, -is,* F.
town, *oppidum, -i,* N.
trader, *mercator, -oris,* M.
tribe, *gens, -tis,* F.
tribune, *tribunus, -i,* M.
troops, *copiae, -arum,* F. pl.
trumpet, *tuba, -ae,* F.
trumpeter, *tubicen, -inis,* M.
try, *conor, -ari, -atus sum.*
twenty, *viginti* (indecl.)
two, *duo, -ae, -o.*

U

under, *sub* (prep. w. acc.)
unless, *nisi.*
until, *dum.*
unwilling, be, *nolo, nolle, nolui.*
upon (on), *in* (prep. w. abl.); upon (against), *in* (w. acc.)
upper, *superior, -ius.*
urge, *hortor, -ari, -atus sum.*
use, *utor, uti, usus sum* (w. obj. in abl.); use (noun), *usus, -us,* M.
useful, *utilis, -e.*

V

valor, *virtus, -utis,* F.
very, sup. of adj. or adv.; as, very brave, *fortissimus.*
veteran, *veteranus, -a, -um.*
victory, *victoria, -ae,* F.
village, *vicus, -i,* M.

W

wage, *gero, -ere, gessi, gestum;* to wage war, *bellum gerere.*
wagon, *carrus, -i,* M.
wait, *exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum.*
wall, *vallum, -i,* N.
want, *inopia, -ae,* F.

wanting, be, *desum, -esse, -fui.*
war, *bellum, -i,* N.
warlike, *bellicosus, -a, -um.*
warn, *moneo, -ere, -ui, -itum.*
waste, lay waste, *vasto, -are, -avi, -atum.*
watch, *vigilia, -ae,* F.
way, *via, -ae,* F.; *iter, itineris,* N.
we, *nos,* gen. *nostrum* or *nostri.*
weaken, *effemino, -are, -avi, -atum.*
weapon, *telum, -i,* N.
weep, *fleo, -ere, -vi, -tum.*
well, *bene.*
what, interr., *quid.*
when, *cum.*
where, *ubi.*
whether, *utrum.*
which, *quod.*
while, *dum.*
who (rel.), *qui, quae, quod;* (inter.), *quis, quae, quid.*
whole, *totus, -a, -um.*
why, *cur.*
wide, *latus, -a, -um.*
widely, *late;* far and wide, *longe lateque.*
wife, *uxor, -oris,* F.
willing, be, *volo, velle, volui.*
win over, *concilio, -are, -avi, -atum.*
wing (of an army), *cornu, -us,* N.
winter, *hiems, hiemis,* M.; to winter, *hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
winter quarters, *hiberna, -orum,* N. pl.
wisdom, *sapientia, -ae,* F.
wise, *sapiens.*
wisely, *sapienter.*
wish, *volo, velle, volui.*
with, *cum* (prep. w. abl.)
withdraw, *se recipere.*
without, *sine* (prep. w. abl.)
withstand, *sustineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum.*
witness, *testis, -is,* M.
woman, *mulier, -is,* F.
word, *verbum, -i,* N.
worthy, *dignus, -a, -um.*
wound, *vulnus, -eris,* N.; to wound, *vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum.*
write, *scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.*
wrong, *iniuria, -ae,* F.

X

Xenophon, *Xenophon, -ontis,* M.
Xerxes, *Xerxes, -is,* M.

Y

year, *annus, -i,* M.
yearly, *annuus, -a, -um.*
yet, *tamen.*
yoke, *iugum, -i,* N.
you, *tu;* pl., *vos.*
young, *iuvenis, -e;* young man, *iuvenis, -is,* M.
your, *tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.*

GENERAL INDEX.

References are to Pages.

ABLATIVE, absolute, 266.
of accompaniment, 24.
of agent, 17, 174.
of comparison, 74, §118.
of manner, 308.
of means, 17.
of object, 222.
of place, 18, 174.
of separation, 137.
of specification, 201.
of time, 174, Rule 27.
Accent, rules of, 277.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 24.
Accusative: of direct object, 4.
of duration of time, 148, Rule 24.
of extent of space, 148, Rule 24.
of end of motion (place to which), 175, Rule 31.
of subject, 237.
two accusatives, 269.
Adjectives—
1st and 2nd Decl., 32.
3rd Decl., 50.
comparison of, 70.
irregular, 141-2.
numeral, 143-6.
rule of agreement, 36.
Adverbs, formation of, 79.
comparison of, 80.
Agent, ablative of, 17, 174.
dative of, 228.
Aliquis, declension of, 155.
Alius, declension of, 142.
Amo, conj. of, active, 96.
passive, 170.
subj. act., 125.
Animal, declension of, 58.
Antecedent of rel. pron., 118(1).
Antepenult, 277, §351.
Apposition, 4.
Audio, conj. of, active, 116.
passive, 196.
subj. act., 128.

BONUS, comp. of, 72, §118.
Bos, decl. of, 269.

CAESAR—
Book I., Chap. I., 234 (7-11), 241 (11-13).
Chap. II., 247 (11-15).
Chap. III., 264 (11-13), 265 (14).
Chap. IV., 272 (12), 279 (9-11).
Chap. V., 279 (12), 283 (6-11).
Calcar, decl. of, 58.
Capio, conj. of, 205.
Cardinal numbers, 144.

Cardinal numbers, definition of, 143, §214.
Caro, declension of, 270.
Cases, names of, 9.
Causal clauses, 200.
Civis, declension of, 57.
Clauses, causal, 200.
conditional, 211.
concessive, 200 (Rule 37), 254.
consecutive (result), 192.
final (purpose), 129.
relative, 119.
temporal, 200.
Cliens, declension of, 58.
Comparatives, formation of—
in adjectives, 70-73.
in adverbs, 80.
Comparison—
of adjectives, 70-73.
of adverbs, 80.
ablative of, 74, §118.
Compounds of *sum*, 229.
Concession, clause of, 200 (Rule 37), 254.
Conditional clauses, 211, 214.
Conjugations—
First, active, 96.
passive, 170.
subj. active, 125.
Second, active, 103.
passive, 179.
subj. active, 126.
Third, active, 109.
passive, 187.
subj. active, 127.
Fourth, active, 116.
passive, 196.
subj. active, 128.
of *capio*, 205.
Conjugation of *eo*, 257.
of *fero*, 249.
of *fio*, 260.
of *hortor*, 218.
of *possum*, 230.
of *sum*, 41, and subj., 124.
of *volo*, etc., 243.
how distinguished from another, 169.
periphrastic, 226.
Consecutive clauses, 192.
Cum, causal and concessive, 200.
enclitic, 148.
prep., 24, 37.
temporal, 201.

DATIVE, of agent, 228.
with adjective, 37.
with compounds of *sum*, 229.
as object, 131, Rule 22.
double, 183.
of indirect object, 23.
of possession, 303.
of service, 183.
Declension of adjectives—
of 1st and 2d decl., 32.
of 3rd decl., 64.
of irregular, 142.
of comparatives, 73.
of superlatives, 74.
of numerals, 145.
Declension of nouns—
first, 10.
second, 22; neuter, 28.
third—consonant stems, 50; i-stems, 57.
fourth, 135.
fifth, 136.
irregular, 269.

Declension of pronouns—
personal, 112.
demonstrative, etc., 152-155.
Demonstrative pronouns, 152.
Deponent verbs, 218.
Determinative pronouns, 153.
Deus, declension of, 269.
Dexter, comp. of, 73, §113.
Direct object—
ablative, 222.
accusative, 4.
Distributive numerals, 143, §216.
Dives, comp. of, 73, §113.
Double dative, 183.
Duo, declension of, 146.

EGO, declension of, 112 (1).
Enclitic, definition of, 35.
Eo, conjugation of, 257.

FERO, conjugation of, 249.
compounds of, 253.
Fifth declension, 136.
Final clauses, 139.
Fio, conjugation of, 260.
First conjugation, 96, 125, 170.
declension, 10.
Fortior, declension of, 73, §115.
Fourth conjugation, 116, 128, 196.
declension, 135.

GENDER, general rule of, 3.
Genitive case, of possession, 191.
partitive, 191.
of material, 302.
Gerund, formation of, 91.
use of, 274, 276.
Gerundive, formation of, 168.
use of, 274, 276.

HIC, declension of, 152.
Historical perfect, 95, §156 (1).
Hortatory subjunctive, 129.
Hortor, conjugation of, 218.

I-STEMS, 59, 276.
Idem, declension of, 153.
Iens, declension of, 259.
Ilis, superlative of adj. in, 71, §111.
Ille, declension of, 152.
Imperative, formation of—
active, 90.
passive, 166.
Imperfect indicative, use of, 95.
Impersonal verbs, 262, §335.
In, prep., use of, 174, Rule 29.
omitted, 174, Rule 30.
Indefinite pronouns, 155.
Indicative in conditions, 212, §293 (1 and 2).
Indirect discourse, 236.
subord. clause in, 237 (Rule 44) and 238, Ex. 7.
object, 23.
question, 221-2.
Infinitive, formation of,
active, 93 (§150), 94 (§152).
passive, 167.
in indirect discourse, 237, 239.
uses of, 285.
Instrument, abl. of, 173.
Interrogative pronouns, 154.
sentences, 15.

Ipse, declension of, 154.
Irregular adjectives, 141-2.
nouns, 269, 270.
verbs—*eo*, 257; *fero*, 249; *fio*, 260; *possum*, 230; *volo*, etc., 243.
Is, declension of, 153.
Iste, declension of, 152.
Iter, declension of, 270.
Iupiter; declension of, 270.
Ius, declension of, 51.
Iusiurandum, declension of, 270.
Iuvenis, comp. of, 73, §113.

LIMIT of motion (place to which), 175, Rule 31.
Locative case, 175.

MAGNUS, comp. of, 72, §113.
Malo, conjugation of, 243.
Malus, comparison of, 72, §113.
Manner, ablative of, 308.
Manus, declension of, 135.
Mare, declension of, 58.
Material, genitive of, 302.
Means, ablative of, 17.
Miles, declension of, 51.
Moneo, conj. of, act., 103; sub. act., 126; passive, 179.
Multus, comp. of, 73, §113.

NAUTA, declension of, 11.
Ne, adv. in cl. of purpose, 129, §196; -ne, enclitic, 35.
Nequam, comp. of, 73, §113.
Nolo, conjugation of, 243.
Nominative case—predicate, 5; subject, 4.
Nonne, use of, 16 (3).
Nubes, decl. of, 58.
Numerals, 143–6.

OBJECT, accusative of direct, 4.
dat. of indirect, 23.
dat. of, with verbs of obeying, etc., 303.
ablative of, 222.
Oppidum, declension of, 28.
Opus, declension of, 51.
Ordinal numerals, decl. of, 145.
definition of, 143.
Os, decl. of, 270.

PARTICIPLES, formation of, act., 90 (3), 94; decl. of pres. part., 66, §103.
Partitive genitive, 191.
Parvus, comp. of, 72, §113.
Passive voice, plan of, 159.
Past tense, Eng. trans. of, 169, §258.
Penult, 277, §351.
Perfect definite, 95, §156 (2); historical, 95, §156 (1); stem, 91, §145.
Periphrastic conjugations, 226.
Personal pronouns, decl. of, 112.
when expressed as subject, 113.
Place where, how expressed, 174, Rules 29-30; to or from which, 175, Rules 31–32.
Plus, declension of, 74.
Possession, genitive of, 191.
dative of, 303.
Possum, conjugation of, 230.
Predicate nom., 5.
Present stems of verbs, 87.

Pronouns, demonstrative, 152.
determinative, 153.
indefinite, 155.
interrogative, 154.
personal, 112.
reflexive, 112.
relative, 118, 154.
pron. subject expressed, 113.
Puer, declension of, 23.
Purpose, clause of, 129–130.

QUESTIONS, forms of, 15.
Qui, declension of, 118, 154.
Quin, use of, 192, §278.
Quis, declension of, 154.
Quotation, direct, 236.
indirect, 236.

REGO, conj. of, active, 109.
subj. active, 127.
passive, 187.
Relative pronoun, decl. of, 118, 154.
agreement of, 118.
rel. clause, 119.
Res, declension of, 136.
Respublica, declension of, 270.
Result, clause of, 191–2.
Ripa, declension of, 11.

SENEX, declension of, 269.
Separation, ablative of, 137.
Sequence of tenses in clause of purpose, 131.
Service, dative of, 183.
Solus, declension of, 143.
Space, accusative of, 148.
Specification, ablative of, 201.
Stems, of nouns, 276.
of verbs—pres., 87; perf., 91.
Subjunctive mood, active, formation of, 122–3.
of *sum*, 124.
of *amo*, 125.
of *moneo*, 126.
of *rego*, 127.
of *audio*, 128.
form of subj. passive, 164–6.
Sui, declension of, 112 (3).
Sum, compounds of, 229.
conjugation of, 41.
subjunctive of, 124.
Superlatives, decl. of, 74, §117.
Supine in *-um*, 276.
Syllables, div. into, 277.

TEMPORAL CLAUSE, 200-201.
Tenses, use of in clause of purpose, 131.
Time, abl. of, 174, Rule 27.
accusative of, 174, Rule 28.
clause of, 201 (1).
Tres, declension of, 146.
Tu, declension of, 112 (2).
Turris, declension of, 57.

UNUS, declension of, 146.
Urbs, declension of, 58.

VETUS, declension of, 66.
comp. of, 73.
Via, declension of, 10.
Vicus, declension of, 22.
Vir, declension of, 23.
Virgo, declension of, 50.
Virtus, declension of, 51.
Vis, declension of, 269.
Vocative case, 10, §27.
Volo, conjugation of, 243.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

SEP 8 1909

SEP 6 1910

Form 410